应时新概念英语2

吴应时 注释

托福名师无老师倾情作序推荐
应时新概念英语系列丛书

作者简介

吴应时　特许金融分析师持证人（CFA），金融风险管理师持证人（FRM），广东外语外贸大学经济学学士，香港中文大学社会学硕士，英语专业八级，《应时新概念英语 2》《应时新概念英语 3》《应时新概念英语 4》作者.

作者**知乎**@菜籽，分享见解、经验和感悟；作者**微博**@才子应时，每天碎碎念生活日常；作者**小红书**@菜籽(493081000)，英语精读，期待你们的关注.

To my mother, Chen Mei
who never gives less than her best.

献给我的母亲陈梅，
她总是把最好的给我。

目录

托福名师无老师代序

能把优美的英语，细细地揉碎了，像掰肉夹馍的馍一样，一小块一小块地掰开，再加上羊肉片儿、花椒、调料，再来一小碟糖蒜，热腾腾的一大碗捧在你的面前。

无老师想了很久，很久，推敲了千次、万次之后，觉得用上面这句话来描述应时的这本书，是最为恰当的。

在多年前，初看到应时这一套对于新概念的拆解，当时的第一感觉，就是这本书应该在一个美国乡村的小屋，旁边点上一盏台灯，一个人摊在老虎椅里面，静静地品读，然后读到精彩的地方，会惊喜地拍着椅子的扶手大叫：漂亮！漂亮！然后霍地站起，满屋子寻找纸笔，马上抄写下来。

每个时代，都会有自己的坚持和梦想。

应时用了十几年的时间，花了上千小时的时间，终于完成了这一部煌煌巨著。在过去的教材当中，我们会有语法书，对于知识进行系统化地梳理。我们会有单词书，让我们有目的性地去增强自己的单词量。我们会有试题的参考书，来给我们讲透每一个试题。但是在此之前，我们很少有这样一本书，来给我们像应时这样，细细地咀嚼文字之美，英语我们几乎看不到应时所做的这个类型的教材。如果看中文的出版物的话，唐诗宋词名家赏析，非常类似于应时在本部书所做出的贡献。

很多的时候，慢慢来比较快。打成分子之后，才比较好吸收。

在过去几十年的教学当中，国内的英语教学，过于重视与考试相关的练习，让学生获取的知识全都是点状的，连不成一条线，很多的时候，学生不知道怎样地去细致理解原文，因为怎样地去理解原文，根本也不是中国英语考试考察的重点，但是在实际生活当中，语言对于我们来说更多的是用于理解和沟通。

因此应时这一系列的小册子，特别适合于不同级的英语教师充实进自己的课堂，这一套书不同于传统的出版物，有很强的应试目的，这套书非常适合于小学、初中、高中，甚至大学的英语课堂，这些课堂当中的老师，可以按照应时给出的解析，每节课花 10 分钟的时间，慢慢帮助学生们分析、拆解和赏析这些英语文章。

同时也非常适合于，热爱自学英语的人，来增强自己对于英语的感知和修养。

时间很短，岁月很长，希望优秀的作品，能在他朝气蓬勃的那一天，就让每一位读者喜爱。这其实也是一种福分，对读者也是，对作者也一样。◇

<div align="right">

2020 年 1 月 1 日
无老师

</div>

（无老师，托福考试名师，著有《7 天搞定托福单词》等书，团队辅导学生数以百万计。）

（无老师官网：http://www.wulaoshi.com）

语法符号体系释义

在开始学习之前，我们需要掌握语法学习的工具——语法符号体系。该工具我在 2011 年已作为学术论文发表，感兴趣可以下载：

吴应时.语法符号体系在英语句子成分分析中的运用[J].大学英语(学术版).2011, 02:192-194.

各种句子成分在该体系中均有特定的标记，不要嫌烦，不要觉得复杂，那只是因为你还不熟悉，磨刀不误砍柴功，随着学习的深入，你一定会记得非常清楚。

主语: "＿＿＿＿"　谓语(系动词): "～～～～"　宾语: "＿＿＿＿"　表语: "＿ ＿ ＿ ＿" "……"

定语: "(　)"　状语: "[　]"　补语: "<　>"　同位语: "{　}"　插入语: "^　^"

本书中对于 there be 句型的 there 均视作语法主语看待，每个成分的具体含义可以参考语法书，在英语的学习过程中，建议参考英汉双解词典和语法书，这两个工具均非常必要，也是学习本书的好帮手。

在分析课文中，如果遇到从句，一般会把表示从句类别的第二个符号打在标点符号的外面，如果只是一个句子内部的句子成分，符号会打在标点符号里面；对于宾语从句和表语从句，则会在第一个引导词下面做相应标记，同时在句子最后一个词的后半部分以及标点符号下作同样的标记，并把标点符号包含进来。

如果是属于没有末尾标点的句子中所包含的从句，则先行词/引导词与末尾词标记不完整，先行词/引导词是标记该词的前半部分，末尾词则是后半部分，而该从句的成分将继续划分。一般说来，如果某成分内部继续细分就是从句。

如果看了以上说明仍旧不能理解，实属正常，可以先行学习课文，再回过来参看。我在第一课中，针对语法符号体系的标记进行了额外的讲解，在后面的课文中也额外补充了语法符号的讲解。

句子成分的划分，核心的成分较少出现模棱两可的情况，比如一个句子的主谓宾语较为确定。相对来说，状语是较容易出现争议的，一是状语本身的类别在不同的语法书中并不统一，二是划分带有一定的主观性。一直以来，我都有意模糊状语的具体类别，均以中括号 "[　]" 表示。

其实句子成分在实际的学习过程中，并没有必要划分得如此细微，有些成分的划分也不一定一成不变，可以有不同的理解。能够借助语法符号更好地理解作者所表达的意思即可，不应舍本逐末，忘却初衷。◇

全书说明

> 背诵的文章生词不要太多，要易上口的；如《新概念英语》第二册 96 课的两盘读音带，就易背，好上口。我就让（北外的大）学生背。——张道真[1]

1. 《新概念英语 2》的课文编写极具水平，所有文章均为外研社之版权所有，本书所有分析之文本均为网上公开资料，本书以学习研究为目的，免费供读者学习，应属于对文献合理使用的范畴。为确保外研社的利益不受影响，本书作者要求：**凡使用本书学习的读者，必须购买外研社《新概念英语 2》的正版教材。**
2. 本书适用人群为小学高年级学生，初中生和高中生，以及英语基础不牢的大学生。另外，对于备考研究生英语考试的考生，本书可以作为打基础的教材使用。
3. 本书需配合原教材使用，原教材提供了大量围绕课文的语言点练习题，原教材中已作讲解的语言点，一般不再重复讲解。
4. 本书包括 96 篇课文，以及教材中四个单元的范例文章，共 100 篇。原则上以**句为单位作分析讲解**。主要采用语法符号分析句子成分，并挑出句子主干呈现给大家。
5. 因很多句子较为简单，所以**讲解并非涵盖每一句话**。较复杂句子会先呈现句子的**主干结构**，再做进一步的分析讲解。有些句子则只讲解一些本人认为有必要提及的语言点。若非句子首字母，一般词组均使用**小写**。分析讲解也统一使用卧式句号"."。
6. 课文的词汇和词组，原教材已有详细归纳总结，本书原则上不会作分析讲解，也不会给出例句。如遇生词，请自行查词典学习。我个人推荐英汉双解词典，可以先读英英释义，再读中文解释。本书所配例句也全部划分了句子成分。
7. 为加强分析讲解的针对性，所有分析讲解都直接在每一段后进行。课文所有的句子都按顺序进行了编号。因原教材每一篇课文都有对应的语法要点，本书也将做一些对应的补充讲解，以关键句型的形式安排在讲解之中。
8. 本书的翻译在教材参考译文的基础上仅做了少量修改，因课文内容偏基础，翻译应注重对应性。本书仅对少量较为拗口的翻译予以理顺，以期符合中文的习惯表达。原教材的翻译也存在一定的错误，本书予以订正。
9. **少走弯路，就是捷径。** 上亿人认可的优质学习材料值得我们反复读背，请拿出背诵 100 篇文章的决心来学习本书。
10. 本书的修订实属辛苦，本人投入了大量的时间。因时间紧张，一定存在错漏，还请读者朋友不吝赐教，**任何错漏，责任在我。请留意本书扉页的勘误二维码，随时反馈和查看已发现之错讹。**
11. 本书的编写初衷是为学习者提供**优秀的早读材料**，希望大家都能背得滚瓜烂熟。
12. **打印指南**：本书为**极简风格**，页面大小仍保持 A5（即 A4 的一半），方便打印携带。具体打印时可提醒打印店人员，以 A4 纸打印，在"页面大小调整"中选择"小册子"，"双面"，装订选择"左"，方向为"纵向"。一张 A4 纸正反两面可以打印本书 4 页的内容。打印之后，打印店员可从中间将 A4 纸切开，即为 A5 大小，然后进行装订。
13. 汪丁丁说**一流的知识都是免费的**。本人欢迎任何个人和组织**传播此书，无需通知**。尤其是中小学生家长，可以随意发送至微信群，让更多的学生一起背诵学习，大家一起背诵，更容易坚持下来。
14. 我不在乎回报。相信你们学得越仔细，就越能看出来我有多认真，以及这本小册子有多优秀。◇

---

[1] 引自谢百三主编. 心中的校园. 清华大学出版社. 2003. P108. 括号内为补充说明.

Unit One (Lesson 1-24) 第 1 单元（第1-24 课）稳扎稳打，慢就是快！
欢迎语　你们有的是时间

吴应时 2022 年 1 月 10 日

你愿意相信时间的力量吗？你会相信，哪怕你花两年时间，认真、仔细地把《新概念英语 2》学完，你也超越了 90%的学习者吗？相信有很多中小学生和学生的家长，正发愁该给孩子学什么英语课外教材。长达 6 年的中学时光，哪怕从零开始学，也是完全有时间把《新概念英语 2》扎扎实实学完的。不要嫌慢，不要故作聪明，语言学习真的没有捷径可走。对于中小学生而言，你们有的是时间。

现在摆在你面前的是这样一本可爱的小册子，我耗费了数个月的时间，帮你分析了《新概念英语 2》里面 100 篇课文，每 25 篇课文为一个单元。我不收你一分钱，我只希望遇到这本小册子的你，可以抛开速成的杂念，老老实实，一个学期学完一个单元，花 2 年时间把这 100 篇课文背熟，把教材里面的练习做完，把单词背清楚。读几遍和背一遍有着本质的区别，囫囵吞枣地背一遍，和清清楚楚地背一遍又有质的区别。这本书就是帮助你们清清楚楚背课文的利器。

两年时间长吗？其实很长。但对于那些动辄花了十多年时间还没有学好英语的人来说，如果给他们一个确定性的 2 年学习计划，我相信很多人会觉得两年时间并不长。你愿意跟本书的数以万计的读者一起付诸行动吗？

人的一生中，总要为了学到什么知识或者本领，去尝试一次。哪怕就是这一次，你坚持下来了，你完成了自己的目标，你便在心中有了成功的经验。这一次长达两年的坚持，你完成了，那么我相信在你未来的人生中，再遇到别的挑战，你在心理上不会感到害怕。成功的经验会内化成属于你的自信，不仅仅是英语学习，推而广之，很多事情都会有心力去做好。

对于基础不扎实的大学生，不要怕丢脸，新概念 2 是一座宝藏，对于打基础，真的非常合适。不要觉得好像能看懂，我可以确信，绝大多数的大学生在本书中一定有生词，比如 matador[第 70 课]，你能立刻说出来这个单词是什么意思吗？能看完一本书并不代表掌握了这本书里所有的词汇和语法，大学生也完全可以用比较短的时间把新概念 2 学一遍。

在学习的过程中，一定要培养自主学习的习惯，先把课文背好，再去考虑拓展的事情。你们没必要一开始就把某个动词的词组都抄在课文上，你先确保你能学会课文中的那个用法，别贪多，嚼不烂的。

本单元的课文较为简单，穿插讲解语法点和关键句型，不用刻意理解，这些语言点在后面的单元课文中还将反复练习。

亲爱的你，去学吧，去背吧，你将迎接一个崭新的自己，一个神经元建立了各种全新突触的英语大脑。◇

Lesson 1 A private conversation 私人谈话

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[学习提示] 这是本书的第一课，本课除了语言点讲解之外，还将对每一个语法符号予以解释说明. 在学习的过程中，你会逐渐熟悉这套非常实用的语法分析工具，相信你会在掌握之后，爱不释手. 与此同时，你也应该记录你的学习日期，所有的时光，都是你进步的见证.

[1][Last week] I went [to the theatre].¹ I had a (very good) seat.² The play was [very] interesting.³ I did [not] enjoy it.⁴ A (young) man and a (young) woman were sitting [behind me].⁵ They were talking [loudly].⁶ I got [very] angry.⁷ I could [not] hear the actors.⁸ I turned round.⁹ I looked at the man and the woman [angrily].¹⁰ They did [not] pay (any) attention.¹¹ [In the end], I could [not] bear it.¹² I turned round [again].¹³ 'I can't hear a word!'¹⁴ I said [angrily].¹⁵

[1]上星期我去戏院看戏。¹我的座位位置很好，²表演很有意思，³但我却无法欣赏。⁴一对青年男女坐在我后面的位子，⁵大声地说着话。⁶我非常生气，⁷我听不到演员的台词了。⁸我回过头，⁹怒视着那对男女，¹⁰他们却毫不理会。¹¹最后，我忍不住了，¹²又一次回过头去，¹³生气地说：¹⁵"我一个字也听不见了！"¹⁴

（*To be continued* 未完待续）

1. I went… [学习提示] 这是本句的主干结构，主要指主语、谓语和宾语.

简单句，主谓结构，to the theatre 为介词短语作地点状语. 本书关于简单句所包含的五大基本句型会在下一课开始讲解，本书所有简单句均包括拓展结构.

[学习提示] 只有重要语言点才会讲解，教材中如已有注释，则此处不讲. 考虑到很多句子非常简单清晰，故**并非每句话都会予以讲解**.

[语法符号讲解] last week 为时间状语，用中括号表示状语[]；I 主语，下画双横线；went 即 go 的过去式，动词作谓语，下画波浪线；to the theatre 状语，用中括号表示[]，因为仅为状语，所以右边的符号画在句点的里面，即".]"，之后会与状语从句画在句点外面的情况".]"进行区分，我们之后还会提到.

2. I had a seat.

简单句，主谓宾结构，其中 had 为实际意义，拥有一个好座位. 宾语在语法上只是 a seat 一个座位，但是定语 good 夹在其中，此处为了让大家学得更细致，用定语的括号给标记了出来，但也可以不标记，将整个 a good seat 视作宾语即可.

[语法符号讲解] I 主语，双横线；had 谓语，波浪线；a good seat 宾语，横线；其

中 good 作定语，括号括起来. 这里 seat 因为只是宾语，而非宾语从句，故横线在 seat 处结束，点句号下面不需要画横线. 如果是宾语从句，我们会把后面的点句号也标记进来，这个之后我们还会遇到，别担心.

3. The play was interesting…

简单句，主系表结构，very 为副词作程度状语.

[语法符号讲解] The play 主语，双横线；was 连系动词，简称系动词，也用波浪线；very 状语，中括号；interesting 形容词作表语，虚线. 如果是表语从句，我们会把后面的点句号也标记进来，以作区分.

4. I did enjoy it…

简单句，主谓宾结构，其中 did not enjoy 一起作谓语动词，这里 not 为该动词的否定表达，严谨一点的话，not 在这里作状语，所以我们额外用中括号做了标记.

[语法符号讲解] I 主语，双横线；did not enjoy 谓语，波浪线；it 宾语，横线.

5. A young man and a young woman were sitting…

简单句，主谓结构，本句主语较长，主语里面有形容词 young 作定语修饰 man 以及 woman，我们额外用括号进行了标记.

[语法符号讲解] A young man and a young woman 主语，双横线，其中形容词作定语所使用的括号属于可以不再标记的层次，本书课文难度偏基础，将予以额外标记；were sitting 谓语，波浪线；behind me 地点状语，中括号.

6. They were talking…

简单句，主谓结构，用了过去进行时，副词 loudly 作程度状语.

[语法符号讲解] They 主语，双横线；were talking 谓语，波浪线；loudly 状语，中括号.

7. I got angry.

简单句，主系表结构，用了一般过去时，very 作程度状语.

[语法符号讲解] I 主语，双横线；got 系动词，波浪线；very 状语，中括号；angry 表语，虚线.

8. I could hear the actors.

简单句，主谓宾结构，could 这种情态动词永远接动词原形.

[语法符号讲解] I 主语，双横线；could not hear 谓语，波浪线；the actors 宾语，横线.

9. I turned round.

简单句，主谓结构，用了一般过去时，动词短语作谓语.

[语法符号讲解] I 主语，双横线；turned round 谓语，波浪线.

10. I looked at the man and the woman…

简单句，主谓宾结构，动词词组 look at 作谓语.

[语法符号讲解] I 主语，双横线；looked at 谓语，波浪线；the man and the woman 宾语，横线；angrily 状语，中括号.

11. They did pay any attention.

简单句，主谓宾结构，any attention 一起作宾语即可，不过细分的话，any 可以看作是 attention 的定语.

[语法符号讲解] They 主语，双横线；did not pay 谓语，波浪线；any attention 宾语，横线，其中我们细分 any 为定语，用了括号.

12. I could bear it.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

[语法符号讲解] in the end 时间状语，中括号；I 主语，双横线；could not bear 谓语，波浪线；it 宾语，横线.

13. I turned round…

简单句，主谓结构，同第 9 句，多了 again 作状语.

[语法符号讲解] 见第 9 句，多了 again 状语，中括号.

14. I can't hear a word.

简单句，主谓宾结构，can 这种情态动词永远接动词原形.

[语法符号讲解] I 主语，双横线；can't hear 谓语，波浪线；a word 宾语，横线.

15. I said…

简单句，主谓结构，副词 angrily 作程度状语.

语法上，I said 后面的直接引语应该作 said 的宾语从句. 所谓直接引语就是完整引用说的内容，不改一词；而间接引语则是经过整理的话语，并非逐字引用，意思一致即可.

[学习提示] 本书中对于**直接引语**在语法上作宾语从句不予划分，意义不大.

[语法符号讲解] I 主语，双横线；said 谓语，波浪线；angrily 状语，中括号.

[2]'It's none of your business,' the young man said [rudely].¹ 'This is a (private) conversation!'²

[2] "我们俩的私人谈话²，关你什么事！"那男的毫不客气地回答道。¹

1. it is none…, the young man said…

简单句，引号内的话可以视为 said 的宾语，只不过该宾语是一个独立的句子. 正如上段第 15 句所说，这类宾语从句不予划分. 直接引语为主系表结构，主句为主谓结构 the young man said.

[语法符号讲解] 直接引语：It 主语，双横线；is 系动词，波浪线；none of your business 表语，虚线. 主句：The young man 主语，双横线；said 谓语，波浪线；rudely 副词作程度状语，中括号.

2. This is a conversation.

简单句，主系表结构. 表语中的 private 为形容词作定语，修饰 conversation，可以额外用括号标记. 在翻译中，我对调了一下句子顺序.

[语法符号讲解] This 主语，双横线；is 系动词，波浪线；a private conversation 表语，虚线；private 定语，括号.

[学习提示] 语法符号讲解到此为止，本书将在之后的学习过程中额外予以讲解较为复杂的语法符号规则，不用担心.

[关键句型] 本文所有句子均为简单句，也都是陈述句. 陈述句的语序，也就是各个句子成分的排列顺序，按照主谓宾的结构排列.

Lesson 2 Breakfast or lunch? 早餐还是午餐？

[1]It was Sunday.[1] I [never] get up [early] [on Sundays].[2] I [sometimes] stay [in bed] [until lunchtime].[3] [Last Sunday] I got up [very late].[4] I looked [out of the window].[5] It was dark [outside].[6] '(What) a day!' I thought.[7] 'It's raining [again].'[8] [Just then], the telephone rang.[9] It was my aunt {Lucy}.[10] 'I've [just] arrived [by train],' she said.[11] 'I'm coming [to see you].'[12]

[1]那是个星期天，[1] 我在星期天是从来不早起的，[2] 有时我要赖床到吃午饭的时候。[3] 上个星期天，我起得很晚。[4] 我望了下窗外，[5] 外面黑蒙蒙的。[6]"什么鬼天气啊！"我心想[7]，"又在下雨。"[8] 正在这时，电话铃响了。[9] 是我露西姑妈打来的。[10]"我刚下火车，"她说，[11]"我这就过来看你。"[12]

（*To be continued* 未完待续）

1. It was Sunday.

简单句，主系表结构，一般过去时. 星期的表达必须非常熟悉.

2. I get up…

简单句，主谓结构，动词词组作谓语，一般现在时，可以表示习惯性的情况. never 为表示频繁程度的副词，在此作状语，这类副词还有：always, usually, seldom, often, sometimes 等等.

[学习提示] 对于初学者，没有副词的概念，非常正常，不一定要在起步阶段就试图搞懂较为抽象的语法概念，完全可以学到后面，等有了一定的语感及词汇量再回过头来翻看语法书，试着理解副词，即便仍然不懂，也不用担心，再学一段时间即可.

[学习提示] 本课开始会逐步穿插讲解**五大基本句型**，本句的主干结构是**五大基本句型之一：S＋V 主语 + 谓语**，其中 S 为主语 subject，V 为谓语动词 verb，即 I get up. 其中 I 是主语，而 get up 是动词短语作谓语. 主谓结构已经可以完整表达一个意思了，故而这是一个基本句型.

[学习提示] 请留意，**本书所有简单句，均包括简单句的拓展结构**，比如本句，on Sundays 为介词短语加在简单句的后面，但并不会让该简单句成为复合句，故我们仍然认为其为简单句. 简单句的拓展包括如下几种方式：词法上而言，有各种限定词语和介词短语；句子成分上而言，有前后各类定语和不同的状语.

3. I stay…

简单句，主谓结构，stay 为不及物动词，也就是不能直接接名词，在这里用介词短语 in bed 作地点状语来进一步表达 stay 在哪里. 如果 stay 后面是形容词，则 stay 为系

动词，为主系表结构，例：<u>He</u> <u>stayed</u> <u>calm</u> [at that time]. 他当时保持了冷静.

4. I got up…

简单句，主谓结构，动词词组作谓语，一般过去时.

5. I looked…

简单句，主谓结构，这里 out of the window 为地点状语，out of 为复合介词，跟 the window 一起构成复合介词短语. 请留意，look out 为小心，留意；但是，没有 look out **of** 这个词组，所以**不能**将这一部分看作谓语而把 the window 看作宾语.

6. It was dark.

简单句，主系表结构，一般过去时.

[学习提示] 本句是**五大基本句型之二：S＋V＋P 主语 ＋ 谓语(连系动词)＋ 表语**，其中 P 是表语 predicative，本句型的谓语意思并不完整，需要和表语一起才能把意思表达完整，通常表述性质和状态. 比如 It was 这是，话没有说完的感觉，这是黑的，这句话才说完整了. 本课第一句也是本句型，it was 也是不完整的，但是 It was Sunday. 这是个星期天，就完整了.

7. What a day it is…I thought.

简单句，主谓结构，what 引导的感叹句中，what 作定语修饰名词，这里省略了 it is，所以按照正常语序来理解的话，可以看作 <u>It is</u> (what) <u>a day</u>.所以 a day 作表语，虚线. 而 I thought 为主谓结构，这里采用了直接引语，感叹句全句在语法上作 thought 的宾语从句，这里不作标记.

8. It is raining.

简单句，主谓结构，现在进行时来表示正在下雨，所以动词 rain 用 V-ing 形式 raining；如果想说今天是个雨天，可以这样说：<u>Today</u> <u>is</u> <u>a **(rainy)** day</u>. 这里用了 rain 的形容词性 rainy.

9. the telephone rang.

简单句，主谓结构.

[学习提示] just then 在这里为表示发生时间的副词，作状语，这类副词还有 now, then, just now, tonight, later, before 等等. 同样的，不理解没关系，等之后再回过头看看.

10. It was my aunt Lucy.

简单句，主系表结构 ＋ 同位语.

[语法符号讲解] Lucy 是 aunt 的姓名,在这里也就是跟 aunt 为同一个位置的词语，作同位语，我们用大括号 "{}" 表示，为了区别同位语从句的表示方法，我们把右边大括号放在点句号的里面，即 "}."，而不是 ".}".

12. I am coming…

简单句，主谓结构，现在进行时在这里表示马上就要发生的情况，to see you 作目的状语，因为动词不定式本身是有自己的宾语的，所以在理解上，see you 可以看作谓宾结构来进一步理解. 如果谓语是整个 be going to do，则为一般将来时的表达形式.

[2]'But I'm [still] having breakfast,' I said.[1]

[3]'What are you doing?' she asked.[2]

[4]'I'm having breakfast,' I repeated.[3]

[5]'^Dear me^,' she said.[4] 'Do you [always] get up [so] [late]?[5] It's one o'clock!'[6]

[2]"但我还在吃早饭，"我说道。[1]

[3]"你在干什么？"她问道。[2]

[4]"我正在吃早饭，"我又说了一遍。[3]

[5]"天哪，"她说道[4]，"你总是起得这么晚吗？[5] 现在已经 1 点钟了！"。[6]

1. I'm having breakfast…

简单句，主谓宾结构，用了现在进行时. 同样也是直接引语，不作额外分析.

[学习提示] 本句的主干结构是**五大基本句型之三：S + V + O 主语 + 谓语 + 宾语**，其中 O 指宾语 object，即 I am having breakfast. 其中 I 是主语，am having 是动词的现在进行时形式作为谓语，breakfast 是宾语，是动作的承受者，吃这个动作最终落在了早餐上面，早餐被吃了.

2. What are you doing?

简单句，主谓宾结构，直接引语里面是疑问句.

3. I'm having breakfast.

简单句，主谓宾结构，同句 1.

4. She said dear me.

简单句，主谓宾结构，这里直接引语是个感叹词，算插入语.

[语法符号讲解] 插入语一般不作句子的成分，我们用"^ ^"来表示，即便删去也不影响句意.

5. Do you get up…

简单句，一般疑问句，通常用 yes 或 no 来回答.

[关键句型] 表示经常发生的事情，always.

6. It's one o'clock!

简单句，主系表结构.

Lesson 3 Please send me a card 请给我寄一张明信片

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Postcards [always] spoil my holidays.[1] [Last summer], I went [to Italy].[2] I visited museums and sat [in public gardens].[3] A (friendly) waiter taught me (a few) words (of Italian).[4] [Then] he lent me a book.[5] I read a few lines, but I did [not] understand a word.[6] [Everyday] I thought about postcards.[7] My holidays passed [quickly], but I did [not] send cards [to my friends].[8] [On the last day] I made a (big) decision.[9] I got up [early] and bought thirty-seven cards.[10] I spent (the whole) day [in my room], but I did [not] write (a single) card![11]

明信片总搅得我假日不得安宁。[1]去年夏天，我去了意大利。[2]我参观了博物馆，还去了公园。[3]一位好客的服务员教了我几句意大利语，[4]之后还借给我一本书。[5]我读了几行，但一个字也不懂。[6]我每天都想着明信片的事。[7]假期过得真快，可我还没有给我的朋友们寄过一张明信片。[8]到了最后一天，我做出了一项重大决定。[9]我早早起了床，买来了 37 张明信片。[10]我在房间里关了整整一天。[11]然而竟连一张明信片也没写成！[11]

1. Postcards spoil my holidays.

　　简单句，主谓宾结构.

2. I went…

　　简单句，主谓结构.

3. I visited museums and sat…

　　并列句，and 连接两个简单句，后一句省略了主语 I.

　　[关键句型] 学习一般过去时，这是表达过去发生的事情最常用的时态，其表达为动词转为过去式. 具体构成为 was/were；did. 本句中 visit 转为 visited，而 sit 转为 sat.

4. A waiter taught me words.

　　简单句，主谓宾结构，me 为间接宾语，words 为直接宾语.

　　[学习提示] 本句的主干结构是**五大基本句型之四：S + V + Oi + Od 主语 + 谓语 + 间接宾语 + 直接宾语**，i 为间接的 indirect，d 为直接的 direct. 双宾语结构的句型很常见，句中这个 words (sth.物)为直接宾语，而因为这个内容是教给我的，所以 me (sb.某人)是间接宾语.

　　[学习提示] 一般而言，动词后面接一个宾语，这类能接两个宾语的，我们称之为

双宾动词，这类动词的用法，请查语法书"动词"的相关内容. 语法是随着语感的增加一点一滴积累起来的一些规律和规则，不能闭门造车埋头死记硬背.

[关键句型] 一般过去时，本句的 teach 转为 taught，该词为不规则变化，请牢记 teach-taught-taught.

5. he lent me a book.

简单句，结构同上句，也是双宾语. lent sb. sth.，这里 sth.是直接宾语 Od，相当于书籍是借这个动作的直接承受方，而借给我这个人 sb.是间接宾语 Oi. 本句可以修改为 lent a book to me，这样就可以更清楚地看出，书籍 a book 才是直接宾语.

这里 lend 是行为人借出去，而 borrow 是行为人借进来，注意区分. 因为一般过去时，所以 lend 转为 lent.

[学习提示] 第 6 课有 give 引导的双宾语结构，还会有相关讲解.

6. I read lines, but I did not understand a word.

并列句，均为主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] read 的过去式和过去分词均一致，但读音不同，read/ri:d/-read/red/-read/red/，很明显，这里是选了中间的过去式，后一句 understand 是否定表达，需要通过 do 转为 did，再加上 not 来表示一般过去时的否定形式.

7. I thought about postcards.

简单句，主谓宾结构，动词短语 think about 作谓语，think 的过去式为 thought，需要专门记住.

8. My holidays passed, but I did not send cards.

并列句，but 连接的两句均为主谓宾结构. but 后句为一般过去时的否定表达.

9. I made a decision.

简单句，主谓宾结构，有个短语做决定，make a decision 需要积累. make 转为 made 即为一般过去时.

10. I got up and bought cards.

并列句,主谓宾结构. get 转为 got；buy 转为 bought，均为一般过去时. get-got-gotten；buy-bought-bought.

11. I spent the day, but I did write a card!

并列句,but 连接,两句均为主谓宾结构. 这里 whole 和 single 都是用作强调. spend-spent-spent；write-wrote/rəʊt/-written/ˈrɪtn/.

Lesson 4 An exciting trip 一次激动人心的旅行

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

I have [just] received a letter (from my brother), {Tim}.[1] He is in Australia.[2] He has been [there] [for six months].[3] Tim is an engineer.[4] He is working [for a big firm] and he has [already] visited (a great number of) (different) places [in Australia].[5] He has [just] bought an (Australian) car and has gone [to Alice Springs], {a small town (in the centre of Australia)}.[6] He will [soon] visit Darwin.[7] [From there], he will fly [to Perth].[8] My brother has [never] been [abroad] [before], so he is finding this trip [very] <exciting>.[9]

我刚刚收到弟弟蒂姆的来信[1]，他正在澳大利亚。[2]他在那儿已经住了 6 个月了。[3]蒂姆是个工程师，[4]正在一家大公司工作，并且已经去过澳大利亚的不少地方了。[5]他刚买了一辆澳大利亚产的小汽车，现在去了澳大利亚中部的小镇艾利斯斯普林斯。[6]他不久之后还要去达尔文玩，[7]再从那里飞去珀斯。[8]我弟弟以前从未出过国，因此，他觉得这次旅行非常激动人心。[9]

1. I have received a letter…

　　简单句，主谓宾结构.

　　[关键句型] 现在完成时，have/has + done 形式.

2. He is in Australia.

　　简单句，主系表结构.

3. He has been.

　　简单句，主谓结构.

　　[关键句型] 现在完成时，因 he 是第三人称单数，故 have 用 has.

5. He is working…and he has visited places.

　　并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓结构；后句为主谓宾结构，a great number of 是名词 + of 构成的量词，一般用在所修饰的词的前面.

　　[关键句型] and 后句为现在完成时，因 he 是第三人称单数，故 have 用 has.

6. He has bought…and has gone…

　　并列句，and 连接前后两句，两个句子共用一个主语 He. 后句中 a small town 是 Alice Springs 的同位语，相当于对这个地方进一步说明一下，这个同位语中含有一个定语来修饰 town. 该定语中的 centre 为英式拼法，也可写作 center.

[关键句型] 两句均为现在完成时.

7. He will visit Darwin.

简单句，主谓宾结构. 本句用了一般将来时.

8. he will fly.

简单句，主谓结构. 本句用了一般将来时. 本课提到了澳大利亚的一些城市名，澳大利亚也是英语国家，其主要城市名有记住的必要.

9. My brother has been…, so he is finding this trip exciting.

so 连接的并列句，前句主谓结构；后句为主谓宾 ＋ 宾补结构，其中 exciting 为宾语 this trip 的补足语.

Lesson 5 No wrong numbers 无错号之虞

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Mr. James Scott <u>has</u> <u>a garage</u> [in Silbury] and [now] <u>he</u> <u>has</u> [just] <u>bought</u> (another) <u>garage</u> [in Pinhurst].¹ <u>Pinhurst</u> <u>is</u> [only] <u>five miles from Silbury</u>, but <u>Mr. Scott</u> <u>cannot get</u> <u>a telephone</u> [for his new garage], so <u>he</u> <u>has</u> [just] <u>bought</u> <u>twelve pigeons</u>.² [Yesterday], <u>a pigeon</u> <u>carried</u> (the first) <u>message</u> [from Pinhurst to Silbury].³ <u>The bird</u> <u>covered</u> <u>the distance</u> [in three minutes].⁴ [Up to now], <u>Mr. Scott</u> <u>has sent</u> (a great many) <u>requests</u> (for spare parts) and (other urgent) <u>messages</u> [from one garage to the other].⁵ [In this way], <u>he</u> <u>has begun</u> (his own private 'telephone') <u>service</u>.⁶

詹姆斯·斯科特先生在锡尔伯里有一个汽车修理部，现在他刚在平赫斯特买了另一个汽车修理部。¹ 平赫特离锡尔伯里只有 5 英里，但詹姆斯·斯科特先生未能为他新买的汽车修理部装一部电话，所以他干脆买了 12 只鸽子。² 昨天，一只鸽子把第一封信从平赫特带到锡尔伯里。³ 这只鸟只用了 3 分钟就飞完了全程。⁴ 到目前为止，斯科特先生已经从一个汽车修理部向另一个发送了很多飞鸽信件，索取备用零件和一些紧急通知。⁵ 就这样，他用上了自己的私人"电话"服务。⁶

1. Mr. James Scott has a garage and he has bought another garage.

并列句，and 连接，两个句子都是主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 首句的 has 为实际意义"拥有"，为一般过去时；次句的 has bought 的 has 则用来让 buy 体现出完成时态，而 bought 才是实际意义，此处是现在完成时，句中的 now 表示到现在为止的情况下，已经买了另一个修理部.

2. Pinhurst is five miles from Silbury, but Mr. Scott cannot get a telephone, so he has bought pigeons.

三个句子一起构成的并列句，首句为主系表结构，次句和尾句均为主谓宾结构. but 和 so 让故事的情节层层递进，因为相距不远，使得在当年装电话还不是很方便的情况下，买信鸽的做法是比较合理的. 英语世界中在距离的表达上喜欢使用 miles，这点可以留意，没必要次次转化为公里来理解.

4. The bird covered the distance…

简单句，主谓宾结构. 动词 cover 在这里的用法值得留意，to travel the distance mentioned 行走（一段路程），例：[By sunset] <u>we</u> <u>had covered</u> <u>thirty miles</u>. 到日落时我

们已走了三十英里.[1] 教材中给出的释义是"越过",理解起来不是很精准. 对于这种含义非常多的基础动词,应使用具备英英释义的词典来进一步理解.

[关键句型] 本句为一般过去时.

5. Mr. Scott has sent requests and messages…

简单句,主谓宾结构. 只不过谓语 sent 有两个并列的宾语,拆开来就是 Mr. Scott has sent requests. And Mr. Scott has sent messages. 均为现在完成时.

[关键句型] 第 4 课和本课均使用了现在完成时,教材对于具体的语法点有补充讲解和例句,强烈建议读者购买教材学习,本书只应作为辅助学习材料使用,不可替代教材.

6. he has begun his service.

简单句,主谓宾结构. 本句为现在完成时.

---

[1] 本书英英释义及例句,如无额外说明,则均摘自牛津词典.

Lesson 6 Percy Buttons 珀西·巴顿斯

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

I have [just] moved [to a house] (in Bridge Street).[1] [Yesterday] a beggar knocked [at my door].[2] He asked me [for a meal and (a glass of) beer].[3] [In return for this], the beggar stood [on his head] and sang songs.[4] I gave him a meal.[5] He ate the food and drank the beer.[6] [Then] he put (a piece of) cheese [in his pocket] and went away.[7] [Later] a neighbour told me [about him].[8] Everybody knows him.[9] His name is Percy Buttons.[10] He calls at (every) house (in the street) [once a month] and [always] asks for a meal and (a glass of) beer.[11]

我刚刚搬进了位于大桥街的房子。[1]昨天，一个乞丐敲我家的门，[2]问我要顿饭和一杯啤酒。[3]作为回报，他头顶着地倒立给我唱歌。[4]我给了他一顿饭。[5]他吃完饭，又喝了酒。[6]然后把没吃完的一块芝士装进衣兜里走了。[7]后来，一位邻居跟我说了他的情况。[8]大家都认识他，[9]他叫珀西·巴顿斯。[10]每个月他都在这条街上逐家逐户光顾一次，总是乞求一顿饭和一杯啤酒。[11]

1. I have moved…

简单句，主谓结构.

[关键句型] 不定冠词的使用，本句 a house，以及下句的 a beggar 和 the beggar 的区别，一个是不定冠词 a，指任何一个 beggar，并非特定；一个是定冠词 the，所表达的含义是特定的某一个人.

2. a beggar knocked…

简单句，主谓结构.

3. He asked me…

简单句，主谓宾结构. ask sb. for sth 中，for 引导目的的状语，也就是要求我是为了什么事情，注意与本文最后一句相区别. a glass of beer 中，a glass of 作定语修饰 beer，只不过整体作状语，可以不必在该状语中再作细分.

4. the beggar stood…and sang songs.

并列句，and 连接两个句子，都是主谓结构，第二句省略了主语 the beggar.

5. I gave sb. sth.

简单句，主谓宾结构. give 接双宾语，其中 sth.**物**为直接宾语，相当于我给了某件东西，所以这个东西是直接的宾语，而这个东西给了 sb.某人，这个**人**是间接宾语.

7. he put cheese and went away.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句主谓宾结构；后句为省略了主语的主谓结构. 芝士条是他们日常生活中经常直接吃的食物，对课文的理解需要大致了解食物在他们日常生活中的常见程度.

9. Everybody know<u>s</u> him.

简单句，主谓宾结构. every, everyone, everybody 等等这类表达，在语法上均用**单数**，所以"认识、了解"一词用 know**s**，这属于必须牢牢记住的基础语法规则，我见过很多大学生、研究生写的英语作文在该语法点犯错.

10. His name is Percy Buttons.

简单句，主系表结构. 我们借此来学习一下姓名的表达，英语中，我们给孩子取名字，这个名字是取出来的，所以是(given) name，这里 given 作定语修饰 name，也叫 first name，本句中 Percy 是取出来的名字，放在前面.

姓氏是家族里面传下来的，不会改变，所以叫(family) name，同样，也是 family 作定语修饰 name，也叫 surname 和 last name，姓氏放在后面，本句中 Buttons 为姓氏.

也就是说，一个完整的名字 first name middle name last name，比如美国前总统小布什，George Walker Bush，其中 George 为名字，可以叫他乔治；Walker 为中间名，一般不用，或者只用 W.；而 Bush 为姓. 中间名很多人是不写出来的，有时为了区分同名同姓的人才使用.

[关键句型] 我们在姓名前不使用不定冠词 a 或者定冠词 the.

11. He calls at house…and asks for a meal and a glass of beer.

并列句，第一个 and 连接两句，而第二个 and 连接两个宾语. 前句为主谓宾结构；后句中 asks for 动词词组作谓语，所以后面 a meal and a glass of beer 整体作宾语，只不过这个宾语中的 beer 由定语 a glass of 修饰.

上一个讲解在本句中再复习一遍，every house，房子用单数.

Lesson 7 Too late 太晚了

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

The plane was late and detectives were waiting [at the airport] [all morning].¹ They were expecting (a valuable) parcel (of diamonds) (from South Africa).² [A few hours earlier], someone had told the police that thieves would try to steal the diamonds.³ [When the plane arrived,] some of the detectives were waiting [inside the main building] [while others were waiting [on the airfield].]⁴ Two men took the parcel [off the plane] and carried it [into the Customs House].⁵ [While two detectives were keeping guard [at the door],] two others opened the parcel.⁶ ^To their surprise^, (the precious) parcel was full of stones and sand!⁷

飞机晚点了,侦探们已在机场等了整整一上午。¹他们期待一个昂贵的包裹,来自南非,里面装着钻石。²数小时以前,有人向警方报告,说有贼人企图偷走这些钻石。³当飞机抵达时,部分侦探等候在主楼内,另一些侦探则守候在停机坪上。⁴有两个人把包裹拿下飞机,运进了海关办公室。⁵这时两个侦探把住门口,另外两个侦探打开了包裹。⁶令他们吃惊的是,价值不菲的包裹里面装满了石头和沙子！⁷

1. The plane was late and detectives were waiting…

并列句，以 and 分为前后两句，第一句为主系表结构，第二句为主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本课学习过去进行时，后句的谓语 were waiting 就是过去进行时.

2. They were expecting a parcel…

简单句，主谓宾结构，也是用的过去进行时. 句末 from South Africa 作定语，修饰 parcel，表示这是一个来自南非的包裹. 南非是非洲南部的一个国家，并非泛指非洲南部，如果想表达非洲南部，则可用(southern) Africa，southern 作定语修饰非洲.

3. someone had told the police that thieves would try to steal…

复合句，**本句是全书第一个复合句**，所谓复合句，是从句子结构的角度来对句子进行分类，可以分为简单句、并列句、复合句和并列的复合句四类. 复合句指除了主句之外，还有从句，融合在一整句中. 大家学到《新概念英语 4》时，会遇到大量复合句.

本句中，主句是主谓宾 +that 引导的宾语从句结构，即 someone had told the police + that…一般来说，that 引导的宾语从句 that 不作任何成分，只是作为引导词，口语中可以省略.

[语法符号讲解] 在引导词 that 处画横线，但没有画满，仅画了"th"两个字母，代表宾语从句从此开始，在宾语从句末尾词 the diamonds.处，在"nds."下画横线，横线**包括**句末**点句号**，表示该横线是宾语**从句**，而非仅仅是宾语. 该从句中 thieves 主语，照常画双横线；谓语 would try，波浪线；动词不定式短语作宾语，"to steal the dia"下画横线，代表宾语. 这样 diamonds 一词的宾语横线中间空了几个字母没有画线，可以有效区分宾语符号和宾语从句符号.

4. When the plane arrived, detectives were waiting… while others were waiting…

复合句，句首为 when 引导的时间状语从句，为主谓结构. 主句 detectives were waiting 为主谓结构，用了过去进行时. 后面还接了一个 while 引导的时间状语从句，也是主谓结构，同样用了过去进行时.

[语法符号讲解] when…arrived 为时间状语从句，故中括号"[]"的"]"打在逗号右边",]"，代表该中括号不是状语符号，而是状语**从句**符号. 同样的，while…airfield 也是如此，一个"]"打在点句号左边，代表地点状语，即"airfield].",，另一个"]"打在点句号右边，代表状语从句的结尾，即"airfield.]".

5. Two men took the parcel…and carried it…

并列句，两句都是主谓宾结构，其中后句省略了主语.

6. While two detectives were keeping guard, two others opened the parcel.

复合句，while 引导的时间状语从句，为主谓结构，仍然是用了过去进行时. 主句则为主谓宾结构.

7. parcel was full of stones and sand!

简单句，主系表结构. 这里的 to their surprise 只是插入语，属于独立成分，而非从句，故本句是简单句，并没有从句得以复合成句.

Lesson 8 The best and the worst 最好的和最差的

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Joe Sanders <u>has</u> (the most beautiful) <u>garden</u> [in our town].¹ [Nearly] <u>everybody</u> <u>enters</u> <s>for</s> 'The Nicest Garden Competition' [each year], but <u>Joe</u> <u>wins</u> [every time].² <u>Bill Frith's garden</u> <u>is</u> larger [than Joe's].³ <u>Bill</u> <u>works</u> [harder] [than Joe] and <u>grows</u> (more) <u>flowers and vegetables</u>, but <u>Joe's garden</u> <u>is</u> <u>more interesting</u>.⁴ <u>He</u> <u>has made</u> (neat) <u>paths</u> and <u>has built</u> (a wooden) <u>bridge</u> [over a pool].⁵ <u>I</u> <u>like</u> <u>gardens</u> [too], but <u>I</u> <u>do</u> [not] <u>like</u> (hard) <u>work</u>.⁶ [Every year] <u>I</u> <u>enter</u> <s>for</s> the garden competition [too], and <u>I</u> [always] <u>win</u> a (little) prize (for the worst garden in the town)!⁷

乔·桑德斯拥有我们镇上最漂亮的花园。¹几乎每个人都参加每年举办的"最佳花园竞赛"，而每次都是乔获胜。²比尔·弗里斯的花园比乔的花园大，³他比乔也更为勤奋，也种植了更多的花卉和蔬菜，但乔的花园更富有情趣。⁴他修筑了一条条整洁的小路，并在一个池塘上架了一座小木桥。⁵我也喜欢花园，但我却不愿意辛勤劳动。⁶每年的花园竞赛我也参加，但总由于是全镇最差的花园而获得一个小奖！⁷

1. Joe Sanders has a garden.

简单句，主谓宾结构，这里的 has 是实际拥有之意.

2. everybody enters a Competition, but Joe wins.

并列句，由 but 连接，表转折. 前句为主谓宾结构；后句为主谓结构. 前句中参加比赛，直接使用 enter a competition 即可，多出的 for 不是习惯的表达，文中配以删除横线.[1] but 后句只用了 Joe 的 first name 名字，没有用 last name 姓氏.

3. Bill Frith's garden is larger…

简单句，主系表结构. 形容词 large 的比较级 larger 作表语.

[关键句型] 本课学习比较的表达，本句 is larger than 比什么大.

4. Bill works harder… and grows flowers and vegetables, but Joe's garden is more interesting.

并列句，but 连接前后两句，前句也是并列结构，都是主谓结构；but 后句为主系表结构. bill works harder，这里副词 hard 的比较级 harder 作程度状语修饰劳作的辛苦

[1] https://www.usingenglish.com/forum/threads/a-little-prize-for-the-worst-garden.269813/

程度. and 后面种植 grows 更多的花和蔬菜，这里的更多没有比较级，只是相比之下种的多. 最后 but 后面 more interesting 是形容词 interesting 的比较级，所以整个比较级一起作表语.

[关键句型] 本句也是比较的表达.

6. I like gardens, but I do not like hard work.

并列句，but 连接前后两句，均为主谓宾结构，这里 hard 是形容词作定语修饰 work，注意与第 4 句作副词的 hard 相区别. 另外，hard-working 是形容词，勤劳的.

7. I enter the competition, and I win a prize…

并列句，and 连接前后两句，均为主谓宾结构，I win a little prize 这里的 little 是小的，用来修饰奖项是一个小奖，不是 a little 的词组，这里出现 a little 属于巧合，你可以理解为 I win a [very] (small) prize.

Lesson 9 A cold welcome 冷清迎新年

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[On Wednesday evening], we went [to the Town Hall].[1] It was the (last) day (of the year) and (a large crowd of) people had gathered [under the Town Hall clock].[2] It would strike twelve [in twenty minutes' time].[3] Fifteen minutes passed and [then], [at five to twelve], the clock stopped.[4] (The big minute) hand did [not] move.[5] We waited and waited, but nothing happened.[6] [Suddenly] someone shouted, 'It's two minutes past twelve! The clock has stopped!'[7] I looked at my watch.[8] It was true.[9] (The big) clock refused to welcome the New Year.[10] [At that moment], everybody began to laugh and sing.[11]

星期三的晚上，我们去了市政厅。[1]那是一年的最后一天，一大群人聚集在市政厅的大钟下面。[2]再过 20 分钟，大钟将敲响十二下。[3]15 分钟过去了，而就在 11 点 55 分时，大钟停了。[4]那根巨大的分针不动了。[5]我们等啊等啊，可大钟没有再动。[6]突然有人喊道："十二点已经过了两分了！大钟不走字了！"[7]我看了一下我的手表，[8]果真如此。[9]市政大钟不愿意迎接新年。[10]此时，大家笑了起来，也唱着歌。[11]

1. we went…

简单句，主谓结构. 大家一起去镇上的广场之类的地方倒数迎接新年，本课主要熟悉时间的表达，在这一课的背后，需要完整地学习时间表达方式才行，不能仅依靠本篇课文.

2. It was the day and people had gathered.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主系表结构；后句为主谓结构.

3. It would strike twelve.

简单句，主谓宾结构. 大钟会敲击报时，12 点钟会响 12 下，《新概念英语 3》第 2 课叫 "thirteen equals one"，讲到了这个点.

4. Fifteen minutes passed and the clock stopped.

并列句，本句是 and 连接前后两句，不是第二个逗号，注意留意，一般来说，单独的逗号无法连接前后两个句子. 本句前后两句均为主谓结构.

6. We waited and waited, but nothing happened.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，均为主谓结构.

8. I looked at my watch.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本课学习带介词的短语，这里 look at 的 at 便是介词，教材中还介绍了 in 和 on 的一些短语，需要回到教材上予以学习.

10. The clock refused to welcome…

简单句，主谓宾结构，拟人化的描写，也是本课标题之意，大钟没有欢迎新年的到来，to welcome the New Year 为动词不定式短语作宾语.

11. everybody began to laugh and sing.

简单句，主谓宾结构，同样是动词不定式作宾语.

Lesson 10 Not for jazz 不适于演奏爵士乐

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

<u>We</u> <u>have</u> <u>an (old) (musical) instrument</u>.[1] <u>It</u> <u>is called</u> <a clavichord>.[2] <u>It</u> <u>was made</u> [in Germany] [in 1681].[3] <u>Our clavichord</u> <u>is kept</u> [in the living room].[4] <u>It</u> <u>has belonged</u> <u>to our family</u> [for a long time].[5] <u>The instrument</u> <u>was bought</u> [by my grandfather] [many years ago].[6] [Recently] <u>it</u> <u>was damaged</u> [by a visitor].[7] <u>She</u> <u>tried</u> <u>to play jazz</u> [on it]![8] <u>She</u> <u>struck</u> <u>the keys</u> [too hard] and <u>two</u> (of the strings) <u>were broken</u>.[9] <u>My father</u> <u>was shocked</u>.[10] [Now] <u>we</u> <u>are</u> [not] <u>allowed</u> <to touch it>.[11] <u>It</u> <u>is being repaired</u> [by a friend] (of my father's).[12]

我家有件古乐器，[1] 被称作古钢琴，[2] 是 1681 年德国制造的。[3] 我们的这架古钢琴被放在客厅。[4] 古钢琴来到我们家已经很久了，[5] 是我爷爷/外公在很多年以前买的。[6] 可它最近被一个客人弄坏了，[7] 客人竟用古钢琴来弹奏爵士乐。[8] 她在弹琴键时力度过猛，两根琴弦受损。[9] 我父亲都震惊了。[10] 现在我们也不允许再碰这架古钢琴了。[11] 父亲的一个朋友正在修理它。[12]

1. We have an instrument.

简单句，主谓宾结构. 本句的冠词 an 是按照 old 这个定语的发音所确定的，/əʊld/ 第一个音是元音，而我们在简化的时候，把 old musical 去掉，instrument 也是元音开头，故仍然用不定冠词 an. 如果我们只拿走 old，不拿走 musical，则是 we have a musical instrument.

2. It is called a clavichord.

简单句，主谓 + 主语补语结构.

[关键句型] 当动作的执行者模糊时，可以用被动语态，这里不必交待是谁来给古钢琴命名的. 这种表达很常见，教材中练习题 B，已将课文中每一句被动语态还原成了主动语态. 本句还原为 <u>We</u> <u>call</u> <u>it</u> <a clavichord>. 这里 a clavichord 为宾语补足语，含有宾语补足语的句子变为被动句时，宾语补足语改作主语补足语.

3. It was made…

简单句，主谓结构.

[关键句型] 教材练习题 B 还原本句为 <u>Someone</u> <u>made</u> <u>it</u> [in Germany] [in 1681].

4. Our clavichord is kept…

简单句，主谓结构.

[关键句型] 教材练习题 B 还原本句为 <u>We</u> <u>keep</u> <u>clavichord</u> [in the living room].

6. The instrument was bought…

简单句，主谓结构.

[关键句型] 教材练习题 B 还原本句为 <u>My grandfather</u> <u>bought</u> <u>the instrument</u> [many years ago]. 英语中 grandfather 不区分是父亲的父亲还是母亲的父亲，即并不区分是爷爷还是外公.

7. it was damaged…

简单句，主谓结构.

[关键句型] 教材练习题 B 还原本句为[Recently] <u>a visitor</u> <u>damaged</u> <u>it</u>.

8. She tried to play jazz.

简单句，主谓宾结构，动词不定式短语作宾语.

9. She struck the keys and two were broken.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构；后句为主系表结构. 本句需要留意 two of the strings 的表达，strings 在这里必须用复数，因为这里讲的是很多琴弦里面有两根被弄坏了. 那么，如果是 one of 呢，请记住，one of＋ 可数名词的复数形式，也是用复数. 如 one of the strings，哪怕断了一根，也要接复数.

10. My father was shocked.

简单句，主谓结构.

[关键句型] 教材练习题 B 还原本句为 <u>This</u> <u>shocked</u> <u>my father</u>.

11. we are allowed to touch it…

简单句，主谓 ＋ 主补结构.

[关键句型] 教材练习题 B 还原本句为 <u>He</u> <u>does not allow</u> <u>us</u> <to touch it>. 和第 2 句一样，宾语补足语变为主语补足语. to touch it 为动词不定式短语作补足语.

12. It is being repaired…

简单句，主谓结构. 本句的名词所有格表达值得留意.

[关键句型] 教材练习题 B 还原本句为 <u>A friend</u> (of my father's) <u>is repairing</u> <u>it</u>.

Lesson 11 One good turn deserves another 礼尚往来

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

I was <u>having</u> <u>dinner</u> [at a restaurant] [when <u>Tony Steele</u> <u>came in</u>.][1] <u>Tony</u> <u>worked</u> [in a lawyer's office] [years ago], but <u>he</u> <u>is</u> [now] <u>working</u> [at a bank].[2] <u>He</u> <u>gets</u> (a good) <u>salary</u>, but <u>he</u> [always] <u>borrows</u> <u>money</u> [from his friends] and [never] <u>pays</u> <u>it</u> [back].[3] <u>Tony</u> <u>saw</u> <u>me</u> and <u>came</u> and <u>sat</u> [at the same table].[4] <u>He</u> <u>has</u> [never] <u>borrowed</u> <u>money</u> [from me].[5] [While <u>he</u> <u>was eating</u>,] <u>I</u> <u>asked</u> <u>him</u> <to lend me twenty pounds>.[6] ^To my surprise^, <u>he</u> <u>gave</u> <u>me</u> <u>the money</u> [immediately].[7] '<u>I</u> <u>have</u> [never] <u>borrowed</u> <u>any money</u> [from you],' <u>Tony</u> <u>said</u>, 'so [now] <u>you</u> <u>can pay for</u> <u>my dinner</u>!'[8]

我当时正在一家餐厅吃晚餐，托尼·斯蒂尔走了进来。[1]托尼曾在一家律师事务所工作，而现在正在一家银行上班。[2]他的薪水很高，但他却总是向朋友借钱，并且从来不还。[3]托尼看见了我，就走过来和我坐到一张桌子前。[4]他从未向我借过钱。[5]当他吃饭时，我提出向他借 20 英镑。[6]令我意外的是，他立刻把钱借给了我。[7]"我还从未问你借过钱，"托尼说道，"所以现在你可以帮我把单买了！"[8]

0. 标题

<u>One good turn</u> <u>deserves</u> <u>another</u>. 这是个习语，表示一个好的举动值得别人同样好的对待，按照中文类似的习语就是好人有好报. a good turn 是词组，[If <u>you</u> <u>do</u> <u>someone</u> <u>a good turn</u>,] <u>you</u> <u>do</u> <u>something</u> (<u>that</u> <u>helps</u> or <u>benefits</u> <u>them</u>.) 有利的事. another 在这里是代词，也就是 another good turn 之意.

1. I was having dinner…when Tony Steele came in.

复合句，主句为主谓结构，后接一个 when 引导的时间状语从句，该从句为主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本课为复习课，本句的主句复习第 7 课关键句型，过去进行时.

2. Tony worked…, but he is working…

but 引导的并列句，两句均为主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本句的前句复习第 3 课关键句型，一般过去时.

3. He gets a salary, but he borrows money…and pays it…

but 以及 and 连接的并列句，均为主谓结构，最后一句 pays 省略了主语.

a good salary 也可以说 a decent salary.

[关键句型] 本句复习第 2 课关键句型，经常发生的事情，always.

4. Tony saw me and came and sat.

并列句，两个 and 把动作按照时间顺序进行连接.

[关键句型] 本句复习第 3 课关键句型，一般过去时.

5. He has borrowed money.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本句复习第 4 课关键句型，现在完成时.

6. While he was eating, I asked him to lend…

复合句，主句为主谓宾 + 宾补的结构，主句中动词不定式短语 to lend me twenty pounds 作宾语 him 的补足语. 前面是 while 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本句的从句复习第 7 课关键句型，过去进行时.

[学习提示] 本句的主干结构是**五大基本句型之五：S + V + O + C 主语 + 谓语 + 宾语 + 宾语补足语**，其中 C 为宾语补足语 object complement. 本句型的特点是该动词接了一个宾语意思不完整，还需要补充一部分才能构成完整的意思，文中我让他，卡住了，让他借我点钱，这样才完整.

7. he gave me the money…

简单句，主谓宾结构，双宾语，me 为间接宾语，the money 为直接宾语.

8. I have borrowed any money…Tony said, you can pay for my dinner.

本句有两句话为直接引语，也就是用引号全文照引，没有经过改写，就是 Tony 的原话. 语法上，这两句话都是 said 的宾语从句.

borrow 是我向别人借入，我想问你借钱时用；lend 则是我把东西借出去给别人.

Lesson 12 Goodbye and good luck 再见，一路顺风

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Our neighbour, {Captain Charles Alison}, will sail [from Portsmouth] [tomorrow].[1] We'll meet him [at the harbour] [early in the morning].[2] He will be in his small boat, {*Topsail*}.[3] *Topsail* is a (famous little) boat.[4] It has sailed [across the Atlantic] [many times].[5] Captain Alison will set out [at eight o'clock], so we'll have plenty of time.[6] We'll see his boat and [then] we'll say goodbye [to him].[7] He will be away [for two months].[8] We are [very] proud (of him).[9] He will take part in an (important) race (across the Atlantic).[10]

我们的邻居查尔斯·艾利森船长明天就要从朴次茅斯启航了。[1]明天一大早我们将在码头为他送行。[2]他将乘坐他的"上桅帆"号小艇。[3]"上桅帆"号是艘有名的小艇，[4]它已经多次横渡大西洋了。[5]艾利森船长将于8点钟启航，因此我们有充裕的时间。[6]我们将参观他的船，然后和他告别。[7]他要离开两个月，[8]我们真为他感到自豪，[9]他将参加一个重要的横渡大西洋的比赛。[10]

1. Our neighbour will sail…

简单句，主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本课学习一般将来时，本文大量使用了一般将来时，请留意.

2. We'll meet him…

简单句，主谓结构，同样用了一般将来时. "'ll" 是 will 的简写.

3. He will be in his small boat.

简单句，主系表结构，in his small boat 是介词短语作表语.

本句中，船的名字用了斜体，在英语中，某些专有名词可以用斜体来表示. 本句中教材对于船名的翻译似有不妥，因 topsail 本身是上桅帆之意，作为船名，这个单词本身也是有意义的，如果用音译，也不应该带有意译写为"涛波赛"，不符合音译规则.

6. Captain Alison will set out…, so we'll have plenty of time.

并列句，由 so 连接，两句均为主谓宾结构，也都用了一般将来时.

8. He will be away.

简单句，主系表结构，下一句也是主系表结构.

10. He will take part in a race.

简单句，主谓结构，动词短语 take part in 作谓语，介词短语 across the Atlantic 作

后置定语修饰 race. 单词 race 另一个常用含义是 n.种族，racism n.种族主义；racist n.种族主义者，种族方面的内容在西方是日常热点，未来的语言实践中相信会经常遇到.

教材的翻译为"参加一次重大的比赛"，an important race 的定语 important 是针对 race 而言的，也就是这个比赛本身就是很重要的，此处改为"参加一个重要的比赛". 因为如果某个大赛是国际性的，就比当地的小比赛要重要很多. 对于参赛者而言，有些人哪怕是参加当地的比赛也是认真准备，这个小比赛对于参赛者而言，参加的这一次也很重要. 故原教材翻译似不准确，因改为突出赛事本身就很重要的表达，并不取决于参赛者的这一次参赛情况.

Lesson 13 The Greenwood Boys 绿林少年

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

The Greenwood Boys are (a group of pop) singers.[1] [At present], they are visiting (all) parts of the country.[2] They will be arriving [here] [tomorrow].[3] They will be coming [by train] and most of the young people (in the town) will be meeting them [at the station].[4] [Tomorrow evening] they will be singing [at the Workers' Club].[5] The Greenwood Boys will be staying [for five days].[6] [During this time], they will give five performances.[7] [As usual], the police will have a (difficult) time.[8] They will be trying to keep order.[9] It is [always] the same [on these occasions].[10]

"绿林少年"是一个流行歌曲组合。[1] 目前他们正在全国各地巡回演出,[2] 明天就要到达此地。[3] 他们将乘火车来,镇上的大部分年轻人将到车站迎接他们。[4] 明晚他们将在工人俱乐部演出。[5]"绿林少年"准备在此逗留5天。[6] 在此期间,他们将进行5场演出。[7] 同往常一样,警察的日子将不好过,[8] 警察将设法维持秩序。[9] 每逢这种场合,情况都一样。[10]

1. The Greenwood Boys are a group of pop singers.

简单句,主系表结构. 乐队组合名首字母大写表特指,同样,The 定冠词也不能少.

2. they are visiting the country.

简单句,主谓结构,为现在进行时.

3. They will be arriving…

简单句,主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本课学习将来进行时,will be doing 形式. 上句为现在进行时,我们与（一般）将来进行时作对比,所谓**一般**将来进行时,是针对**过去**将来进行时区分的,通常"一般"二字予以省略.

4. They will be coming… and most will be meeting them…

并列句,均为主谓宾结构,也均为将来进行时.

7. they will give five performances.

简单句,主谓宾结构,一般将来时.

9. They will be trying to keep order.

简单句,主谓宾结构,将来进行时. 动词不定式短语作宾语.

Lesson 14 Do you speak English? 你会讲英语吗？

成长足迹：20＿＿年＿＿月＿＿日

I had an (amusing) experience [last year].¹ [After I had left a (small) village (in the south of France),] I drove on [to the next town].² [On the way], a (young) man waved [to me].³ I stopped and he asked me [for a lift].⁴ [As soon as he had got into the car,] I said good morning [to him] [in French] and he replied [in the same language].⁵ [Apart from a few words], I do [not] know (any) French [at all].⁶ Neither of us spoke [during the journey].⁷ I had [nearly] reached the town, [when the young man [suddenly] said, ^very slowly^, 'Do you speak English?']⁸ (As I [soon] learnt,) he was English {himself}!⁹

去年我有过一次有趣的经历。¹在离开法国南部的一个小村庄后，我继续驶往下一个城镇。²途中，一个青年人向我招手。³我把车停下，他让我载他一程。⁴他一上车，我就用法语向他问早上好，他也同样用法语回答我。⁵除了个别几个单词外，我根本不会法语。⁶旅途中我们谁也没讲话。⁷就要到达那个镇时，那青年突然开了口，慢慢地说道："你会讲英语吗？"⁸我很快意识到，他也是个英国人！⁹

0. 标题

Do you speak English? 一般疑问句.

1. I had an experience…

简单句，主谓宾结构，experience 作经历讲，有可数和不可数不同的用法，需要留意，这里是作为可数名词使用的，加了冠词 an. 至于是用 a 还是 an，主要要临近的单词是否元音开头，这里 amusing 为/əˈmjuːzɪŋ/为/ə/开头，故用 an.

2. After I had left a village, I drove on…

复合句，主句主谓结构；时间状语从句为主谓宾结构，后面 in the south of France 为介词短语作后置定语修饰 village.

[关键句型] 本课学习过去完成时，该时态常用于表示两件都发生在过去的事情，其中发生在更久远（更前面）的事情，用过去完成时，而后发生的事情，用一般过去时. 本句有两个事情发生在过去，1. 开车 drove；2. 离开村庄 left a village，根据文意，作者先离开了村庄，再开车上路，所以离开村庄所发生的时间更久远，发生在开车之前，所以用过去完成时，had done.

[语法符号讲解] 时间状语从句用中括号"[]"表示，其中右边的括号把 France 所

跟着的逗号也包括了进来，即"France,]"，表示这是状语**从句**，而非状语.

3. a man waved…

简单句，主谓结构. 这里 young 是定语修饰 man，一般不用细分，直接一起作主语即可.

4. I stopped and he asked me.

并列句，都是主谓宾结构.

5. As soon as he had got into the car, I said good morning and he replied…

并列复合句，由 and 连接前后两个句子，前句为复合句，包含 as soon as 引导的时间状语从句，从句和主句均为主谓宾结构. and 后句为简单句，主谓结构.

[关键句型] 这人先上车，我再跟他说早上好，所以先上车用过去完成时.

6. I do know any French…

简单句，句首是一个副词短语作状语，除了聊了简单几句话之外.

7. Neither of us spoke…

简单句，主谓结构.

8. I had reached the town, when the young man said…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，为主谓宾结构，宾语是直接引语，问了个问题.

9. As I learnt, he was English…

复合句，主句主系表结构，这里反身代词 himself 为 English 英国人的同位语，表示强调，所以在句意上说他也是个英国人，感觉就跟自己一样，都可以说英语，大呼认错了，就比教材按照反身代词翻译成"他自己就是个英国人"要更合理，当然，教材更强调准确. 反身代词更常见的用法是作为动词宾语，这个之后会遇到.

As I learnt 在语法上是定语从句，as 作 learnt 的宾语. 在这里可以与 as 引导的时间状语从句稍作区分，时间状语从句表达"正当，一边一边，随着"的意思，如 He smiled [as he passed.] 他路过的时候笑了一下.

Lesson 15 Good news 好消息

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[1]The secretary told me that Mr. Harmsworth would see me.¹ I felt [very] nervous [when I went into his office.]² He did not look up [from his desk] [when I entered.]³ [After I had sat down,] he said that business was [very] bad.⁴ He told me that the firm could not afford to pay [such] (large) salaries.⁵ (Twenty) people had [already] left.⁶ I knew that my turn had come.⁷

[1]秘书告诉我说哈姆斯沃斯先生要见我。¹我感到非常紧张地走进他的办公室。²我进去的时候，他连头也没抬。³待我坐下后，他说生意非常不景气。⁴他还告诉我，公司支付不起这么庞大的工资开支，⁵有 20 人已经离职。⁶我知道这次该轮到我了。⁷

（*To be continued* 未完待续）

1. The secretary told me that Mr. Harmsworth would see me.

复合句，主谓宾 + 宾语从句结构，其中 that 引导的宾语从句为主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本课学习间接引语，也就是转述别人的话，这里是 told me that.

[语法符号讲解] 对于宾语从句的标记，我们在第 7 课已有讲解，这里予以复习. 在引导词 that 处画横线，但没有画满，仅画了"th"两个字母，代表宾语从句从此开始，在宾语从句末尾词 me.处，因为该词仅 2 个字母，所以在该词和句末点句号都画上横线，表示 me 为宾语，也表示该宾语从句的结束.

2. I felt nervous when I went into his office.

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是一个 when 引导的时间状语从句，该从句是主谓宾结构.

[语法符号讲解] when 引导的时间状语从句用中括号"[]"表示，注意其右括号在括回时，需要包括点句号，以表示为从句，即"office.]".

3. He did not look up…when I entered.

复合句，主句主谓结构，后面是一个 when 引导的时间状语从句，该从句也是主谓结构. 状语从句的语法符号见上一句讲解.

4. After I had sat down, he said that business was bad.

复合句，这句话有两个从句. 主句是 he said that，主谓 + 宾语从句结构. 句首是一个 after 引导的时间状语从句，该状语从句结尾已通过语法符号标记"sat down,]". 后面 that 引导的宾语从句为主系表结构.

[关键句型] he said that…转述他所说的内容，间接引语.

[语法符号讲解] that 引导的宾语从句，引导词 that 本身不作成分，所以我们标记"th"，画横线，表示宾语从句开始，然后在最后 bad 一词，予以标记"ba"虚线，表示 bad 本身在从句中作表语，然后在"d."标记横线，代表宾语从句到此结束.

5. He told me that the firm could not afford to pay salaries.

复合句，主谓宾 + 宾语从句结构. 宾语从句为主谓宾结构，其中动词不定式短语 to pay salaries 作宾语，该宾语中包括一个程度副词 such 作程度状语修饰形容词 large，而 large 又作为定语修饰 salaries.

[语法符号讲解] that 引导的宾语从句，引导词 that 的标记同上，在最后 salaries 一词，因为该词比较多字母构成，我们可以把宾语符号一直画到"sal"下，中间几个字母留白，以区分后面"ies."的横线标记. 最后三个字母加上句点均画横线，表示宾语从句至此结束.

6. people had left.

简单句，主谓结构.

7. I knew that my turn had come.

复合句，主谓宾 + 宾语从句结构.

[2]'Mr. Harmsworth,' I said [in a weak voice].¹

[3]'Don't interrupt,' he said.²

[4][Then] he smiled and told me I would receive (an extra thousand) pounds [a year]!³

[2]"哈姆斯沃斯先生，"我无力地说道。¹

[3]"不要打断我的话，"他说。²

[4]然后他微笑了一下告诉我说，我每年将得到额外 1,000 英镑的收入。³

1. I said Mr. Harmsworth.

简单句，主谓宾结构，只不过宾语是引号里面的内容.

2. he said…

简单句，主谓宾结构，这里直接引语作宾语从句，不予标记. 这个 interrupt 则是该宾语从句的谓语动词，因为面对面谈话，省了主语，直接用了祈使句 don't interrupt.

3. he smiled and told me I would receive a thousand pounds.

复合句，主句有两个谓语，由 and 连接，相当于是两个句子，he smiled 一句，另一句则是 he told me that I would…该宾语从句为主谓宾结构，并且省略了引导词 that.

关于数字表达，在金融行业，严格按照每三位加一个逗号来表达，如 1,000 a

thousand；1,000,000 a million；1,000,000,000 a billion，这样在数字的表达上，就可以看逗号来表达，比如 20,000,000 则是 twenty million.

[语法符号讲解] 这里的宾语从句没有引导词 that，如何表达宾语从句的开始呢，那就是让 me 下面的宾语横线符号延长到空格处，相当于带出来一个宾语从句，另外，在最后 year 的后两个字母"ar!"也需要画横线予以标记宾语从句到此结束.

[学习提示] 本文作者公司经营不善，已经在裁员求存了，此时给作者加薪，潜在的安排是需要他多做别人的工作而已，公司业务不好，就好比一艘船快要沉了，其实算不上什么好消息. 在这种情况下，应该尽快开始找新工作.

Lesson 16 A polite request 彬彬有礼的要求

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[If you park your car [in the wrong place],] (a traffic) policeman will [soon] find it.[1] You will be [very] lucky [if he lets you <go> [without a ticket].][2] [However], this does [not] [always] happen.[3] (Traffic) police are [sometimes] [very] polite.[4] [During a holiday in Sweden], I found this note [on my car]:[5] "^sir^, we welcome you [to our city].[6] This is a ('No Parking') area.[7] You will enjoy your stay [here] [if you pay attention to our street signs.][8] This note is [only] a reminder."[9] [If you receive a request (like this),] you cannot fail to obey it![10]

一旦你把汽车停错了地方，交警很快就会发现。[1]如果他没给你罚单就放你走了，算你走运。[2]然而，情况并不都是这样，[3]交警有时也很客气。[4]有一次在瑞典度假，我发现我的车上有这样一个字条：[5]"先生，欢迎您光临我们的城市。[6]此处是'禁止停车'区域。[7]如果您对我们街上的标识稍加注意，您在此将过得很愉快。[8]谨此提请注意。"[9]如果你收到这样的恳求，你是不会不遵照执行的！[10]

1. If you park your car…, a traffic policeman will find it.

复合句，主句是主谓宾结构，句首是 if 引导的条件状语从句，表假设，该从句为主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本课学习 if 引导的条件句，通常是主句用将来时，本句的 will find；从句用现在时，本句 park your car. 之后在第 40 课，我们会介绍虚拟语气的内容.

2. You will be lucky if he lets you go…

复合句，主句是主系表结构，后面是 if 引导的条件状语从句，该从句为主谓宾 + 宾补的结构，这里 without a ticket 为介词短语作方式状语修饰前面放走的方式，是没有领罚单就让交警给放走了.

5. I found this note…:

简单句，主谓宾结构，不过这里是以冒号结尾，意思是后面的内容为这张 note 上写的内容，语法上后面的句子为 note 的同位语，但实际上不必标记.

7. This is a 'No Parking' area.

简单句，主系表结构. 这里表语的用法为名词性词组当作形容词用，相当于是 no parking 作定语修饰 area. 这种用法在英语中很常见，比如 This is a (no smoking) area.

此处禁止吸烟.

8. You will enjoy your stay if you pay attention to our street signs.

复合句，主句是主谓宾结构，其后跟了一个 if 引导的条件状语从句，该从句中的谓语为动词短语 pay attention to，这里比较特殊，"有些由动词构成的短语包含有一个名词，多数语言学家都不把它们归入动词短语范围之内，但它们的作用和动词短语是差不多的" [1]，这里是"动词 + 名词 + 介词"的形式，考虑到其作用上近似于动词短语，我们为理解方便，将其整个作为谓语，所以后面 our street signs 为宾语. 另一种标记方式为：[if you pay attention [to our street signs].]，供参考.

10. If you receive a request…, you cannot fail to obey it!

复合句，主句是主谓宾结构，动词不定式短语作宾语，句首是一个 if 引导的条件状语从句，主谓宾结构. 根据 *How to win friends and influence people* 一书中所讲，"People don't criticize themselves [for anything], [no matter how wrong it may be.]" [2]人们无论犯了多大的错，也绝不会怪罪自己. 这句话"no matter + 疑问词"引导让步状语从句. 从这里其实可以看出，如果交警开了罚单，车主肯定是内心不服气的，也只会怨自己倒霉，并不会觉得自己有什么做得不对的地方，但是交警不罚款，只是一个温馨提示，这给人的感觉就好多了.

[1] 马德高主编. 张道真大学英语语法. 合肥：安徽人民出版社. 2013.6. P257.
[2] Dale Carnegie. *How to win friends and influence people*. Pocket Books. 2010.5. P5.

Lesson 17 Always young 青春常驻

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

My aunt {Jennifer} is an actress.<u></u>[1] She must be [at least] thirty-five years old.[2] [In spite of this], she [often] appears [on the stage] [as a young girl].[3] Jennifer will have to take part in a (new) play [soon].[4] [This time], she will be a girl (of seventeen).[5] [In the play], she must appear [in a (bright red) dress and (long black) stockings].[6] [Last year] [in another play], she had to wear (short) socks and a (bright, orange-coloured) dress.[7] [If anyone [ever] asks her how old she is,] she [always] answers, '^Darling^, it must be *terrible* to be grown up!'[8]

我的姑姑詹妮弗是位演员，[1]她少说也有35岁了。[2]尽管如此，她却常在舞台上扮演小姑娘。[3]詹妮弗很快又要参加一个新剧的演出。[4]这一次，她将扮演一个17岁的少女。[5]演出时她必须穿一条鲜红色的裙子和黑色的长筒袜。[6]去年在演另一个剧时，她不得不穿短袜和一件鲜艳的橘红色的衣服。[7]但凡有人问起她年龄多大，她总是回答道："亲爱的，长成大人**真可怕**啊！"[8]

1. My aunt is an actress.

简单句，主系表结构，姑姑的名字 Jennifer 是主语的同位语，这个名字还蛮多女生用的. 演员这个词是分男女的，男演员为 actor，女演员为 actress.

[学习提示] 关于名词的性，属于名词章节,这类单词还有很多,比如 waiter waitress.

2. She must be thirty-five years old.

简单句，主系表结构，系动词部分是跟情态动词 must 一起构成的，表示一种较为肯定的猜测.

3. she appears…

简单句，主谓结构. appear 的意思为 to come or perform before the public 出演，在这里作不及物动词，而 as a young girl 作方式状语，表示是以年轻女孩的形象演出的.

4. Jennifer will have to take part in a play.

简单句，主谓宾结构. 谓语为动词短语构成.

[关键句型] 本课学习情态动词 must 所表示的不可逃避的义务，可以用 have to 或者 have got to 来替代 must，本句则为 have to.

5. she will be a girl…

简单句，主系表结构.

6. she must appear…

简单句，主谓结构. must 表示必须这样，无法逃避这个义务.

7. she had to wear socks and a dress.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] have to 可以与更多的时态连用，本句 have 改为了 had，用了过去式.

8. If anyone asks her how…, she answers that…

复合句，本句有一个 if 引导的条件状语从句，该从句从 if…she is 为止，这个从句是主谓宾 + 宾语从句结构，包含了一个 how 引导的宾语从句，该宾语从句为疑问句 how old she is，正常语序为 she is how old. 主句是 she answers + 直接引语，该直接引语在语法上作 answer 的宾语从句，引号里面的句子为主系表结构，it 为形式主语，动词不定式为真正的主语，可以理解为 To be grown up must be terrible.

[语法符号讲解] 本句涉及到了状语从句中含有宾语从句的情况，我们仍先用中括号[]把状语从句予以标记，把右括号放在逗号右边 ",]"，然后再把疑问词 how 前面两个字母下面画上宾语从句的开始符号，然后在 is 的 s 下面包括逗号一起，画横线，表示该宾语从句到此结束.

Lesson 18 He often does this! 他经常干这种事！

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[1][After I had had lunch [at a village pub],] I looked for my bag.[1] I had left it [on a chair] (beside the door) and [now] it wasn't there![2] [As I was looking for it,] the landlord came in.[3]

[2]'Did you have a (good) meal?" he asked.[4]

[3]'Yes, thank you,' I answered, 'but I can't pay the bill.[5] I haven't got my bag.'[6]

[4]The landlord smiled and [immediately] went [out].[7] [In a few minutes] he returned [with my bag] and gave it [back to me].[8]

[5]'I'm [very] sorry,' he said.[9] 'My dog had taken it [into the garden].[10] He [often] does this!'[11]

[1]我在一家乡村小酒馆吃过午饭后，就找我的提包。[1] [2]我曾把它放在门边的椅子上，可这会儿不见了！[2]当我正在寻找时，酒馆老板走了进来。[3]

[2]"您吃得好吗？"他问。[4]

[3]"很好，谢谢。"我回答，"但我付不了帐，[5]我的提包不见了。"[6]

[4]酒店老板笑了笑，马上走了出去。[7]一会儿工夫他拿着我的提包回来了，把它还给了我。[8]

[5]"实在抱歉，"他说，[9]"我的狗把它弄到花园里去了，[10]他常干这种事！"[11]

1. After I had had lunch…, I looked for my bag.

复合句，after 引导时间状语从句，为主谓宾结构，主句亦为主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本课学习 have 构成现在完成时和过去完成时的用法，本句的从句中，had had lunch 为过去完成时，第一个 had 是构成过去完成时的标识 had＋done，其中第二个 had 是 have lunch 中 have 的过去分词，正好也是 had，所以两个 had 在此连用.

2. I had left it… and it wasn't there!

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构，后句为主系表结构.

[关键句型] 前句为过去完成时，had done，这里 leave 的过去分词是 left，这个 left 所在的位置，就是上一句中第二个 had 的位置.

3. As I was looking for it, the landlord came in.

复合句，as 引导了时间状语从句，表示自己正在找着，与此同时，老板进来了，为主谓宾结构，as 在这里是从属连词，一般用来引导从句，自身不作成分.

4. Did you have a meal?

简单句，疑问句，主谓宾结构.

5. I can't pay the bill.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

6. I haven't got my bag.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] have got 为现在完成时，否定形式在 have 后面加 not，或者写为 haven't.

7. The landlord smiled and went…

并列句，主谓结构.

8. he returned and gave it…

并列句，前句主谓结构，and 后句为省略了主语 he 的主谓宾结构.

后面几句为简单的主系表和主谓宾结构，略.

Lesson 19 Sold out 售罄

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[1]'The play may begin [at any moment],' I said.[1]

[2]'It may have begun [already],' Susan answered.[2]

[3]I hurried [to the ticket office].[3] 'May I have two tickets ^please^?' I asked.[4]

[4]'I'm sorry, we've sold out,' the girl said.[5]

[5]'(What) a pity!' Susan exclaimed.[6]

[6][Just then], a man hurried [to the ticket office].[7]

[7]'Can I return (these two) tickets?' he asked.[8]

[8]'Certainly,' the girl said.[9]

[9]I went [back] [to the ticket office] [at once].[10]

[10] 'Could I have (those two) tickets ^please^?' I asked.[11]

[11]'Certainly,' the girl said, 'but they're for next Wednesday's performance.[12] Do you [still] want them?'[13]

[12]'I might [as well] have them,' I said [sadly].[14]

[1] "戏剧马上就要开演了，"我说道。[1]

[2] "也许已经开演了呢，"苏珊回答道。[2]

[3] 我匆匆赶到售票处，[3] 问："我可以买两张票吗？"[4]

[4] "对不起，票已售罄。"那位姑娘说。[5]

[5] "太可惜了！"苏珊大声感叹道。[6]

[6] 正在这时，一个男子匆匆奔向售票处。[7]

[7] "我可以退掉这两张票吗？"他问。[8]

[8] "当然可以，"那姑娘说。[9]

[9] 我马上又回到售票处。[10]

[10] "请问下我可以买那两张退的票吗？"我问道。[11]

[11] "当然可以，不过这两张票是下星期三的，[12] 你还要吗？"[13]

[12] "我还是买下的好，"我垂头丧气地说。[14]

1. The play may begin…

简单句，主谓结构，再次留意，情态动词 may 后面如果接动词的话，用原形.

[关键句型] 本课学习 can 和 may 的用法，本句的 may 表示推测.

2. It may have begun…

简单句，主谓结构，这里是 have 这个动词接在 may 后面，所以 have 必须用原形，否则 it has.

[关键句型] 本句的 may 表示推测.

3. I hurried…

简单句，主谓结构.

4. May I have two tickets.

疑问句，这句话非常客气，用了 may 和 please.

[关键句型] 本句的 may 表示请求.

5. I'm sorry, we've sold out…

两个简单句，一般来说，逗号 comma 不能直接连接两个完整的句子，这里可以用句号 period，或者可以理解为逗号在此表示口语中的停顿. we've 为 we have 的缩写.

6. a pity…

感叹句，有所省略，可以理解为 <u>it is</u> (what) <u>a pity</u>，感叹句中 what 作定语修饰表语 a pity.

7. a man hurried…

简单句，主谓结构.

8. Can I return tickets?

疑问句，主谓宾结构，这里用的 can，下面用了 could，两者态度不一样.

12. they're for next Wednesday's performance.

简单句，主系表结构. 这里 for 所带的成分一起作表语. 这里 they're 是 they are 的缩写.

14. I might have them.

简单句，主谓宾结构，这里的 as well 作状语. 后面 I said sadly 这里 sadly 为副词作状语，sad 是形容词，通过 + ly 构成副词，具体的副词构词法不止这一种方式，以后还会遇到，可以参看语法书副词章节.

Lesson 20 One man in a boat 独坐孤舟

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Fishing is (my favourite) sport.[1] I [often] fish [for hours] [without catching anything].[2] But this does not worry me.[3] Some fishermen are unlucky.[4] [Instead of catching fish], they catch (old) boots and rubbish.[5] I am [even] [less] lucky.[6] I [never] catch anything — [not] [even] old boots.[7] [After having spent (whole) mornings [on the river]], I [always] go [home] [with an (empty) bag].[8] 'You must give up fishing!' my friends say.[9] 'It's a waste (of time).'[10] But they don't realize (one important) thing.[11] I'm [not] [really] interested [in fishing].[12] I am [only] interested [in sitting] [in a boat] and [doing nothing] [at all]![13]

钓鱼是我特别喜爱的一项运动。[1] 我经常一钓数小时却一无所获，[2] 但我从不为此烦恼。[3] 有些垂钓者就是不走运，[4] 他们往往鱼钓不到，却钓上来些旧靴子和垃圾。[5] 我的运气甚至还不及他们。[6] 我什么东西也未钓到过——就连旧靴子也没有。[7] 我总是在河上呆上整整一上午，然后空着袋子回家。[8] "你可别再钓鱼了！"我的朋友们说，[9] "这是浪费时间。"[10] 然而他们没有认识到重要的一点，[11] 我并不是真的对钓鱼有兴趣，[12] 我感兴趣的只是独坐孤舟，无所事事！[13]

1. Fishing is a sport.

简单句，主系表结构.

[关键句型] 本课学习动名词,动名词有很多用法,这里 fish 本身有名词鱼的意思,也有动词钓鱼的意思，这里应该要用钓鱼这个意思，可是动词 fish 不能作主语，于是我们将该动词进行名词化改造，用动名词 fishing，这样在语法上就是名词的性质，可以担任主语了.

2. I fish…

简单句，主谓结构. 这里 fish 作动词解，钓鱼之意. without catching anything 为介词短语作状语，修饰动词 fish，没钓到鱼.

[关键句型] 动名词还可以作宾语. 这里 catching 作介词 without 的宾语，也就是"介词宾语". 动名词在语法上具有名词性质，但是也带有动词的性质，故而 catching 仍可带自己的宾语，catch sth. 抓住什么，这里 catching fish 的 fish 就是这个动名词 catching 的宾语.

6. I am lucky.

简单句，主系表结构. 这里 even 和 less 都是程度状语，更不走运了.

7. I catch anything…

简单句，主谓宾结构，后面有一个破折号，表示进一步说明.

8. I go…

简单句，主谓结构，但是这里有一个 after 所带的介词短语作状语，并非从句. 因为该状语结构比较复杂，我们予以进一步分析该状语内部的一些成分，便于理解.

9. You must give up fishing!

简单句，主谓宾结构. 这里 fishing 一样必须用动名词形式，比如我们必须放弃玩耍，不能说 We must give up play.(×) 只能说 We must give up playing. 只有 play 的动名词形式才能在这里作宾语.

12. I'm interested…

简单句，主系表结构. 这里 I'm 为 I am 的缩写，下一句故意用了完整表达，以利于分辨，这些细节足见本教材课文的用心.

同样，本课用到了介词宾语这种情况，这里 in doing 也是介词 in＋动名词来作介词宾语.

[关键句型] in fishing，这里也是介词宾语，用动名词作宾语.

13. I am interested…

简单句，主系表结构，本句大体上跟上一句一致，and 后面直接是 doing，此处省略了 in.

Lesson 21 Mad or not? 是不是疯了

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Aeroplanes are [slowly] driving me <mad>.¹ I live [near an airport] and (passing) planes can be heard [night and day].² The airport was built [years ago], but [for some reason] it could not be used [then].³ [Last year], ^however^, it came into use.⁴ (Over a hundred) people must have been driven away [from their homes] [by the noise].⁵ I am one (of the few people) (left).⁶ [Sometimes] I think this house will be knocked down [by a passing plane].⁷ I have been offered a large sum of money <to go away>, but I am determined [to stay here].⁸ Everybody says I must be mad and they are [probably] right.⁹

飞机正在逐渐把我逼疯。¹我住在一个机场附近，过往飞机的声音不绝于耳，不分昼夜。²机场是许多年前建的，但由于某种原因当时未能启用。³然而去年机场投入使用了。⁴有 100 多人肯定是被噪音逼得已经弃家远去，⁵我是少数留下来的人中的一个。⁶有时我觉得这房子就要被一架飞过的飞机撞毁。⁷他们曾向我提出赔一大笔钱让我搬走，但我决定留在这儿。⁸大家都说我肯定是疯了，也许他们说的是对的。⁹

1. Aeroplanes are driving me mad.

简单句，主谓宾 + 宾补结构，drive sb. mad，或者 drive sb. crazy，把某人逼得发狂.

2. I live… and planes can be heard…

并列句，and 连接前后两句，均为主谓结构. and 后一句为被动语态，飞机的声音被听到，在翻译时需要补充进来. 在表达昼夜不停，夜以继日这个意思时，用 day and night 或者 night and day 是可以互换的；不过 night and day 还有一个意思是 A clear change or difference between two things，两件事情完全不一样，跟 like 一起使用，例：The contrast (between the two) is like night and day.[1] 两相对比，天差地别.

[关键句型] 本课复习被动语态，can be heard.

3. The airport was built but it could not be used.

并列句，but 表转折，均为主谓结构.

[关键句型] airport was built 为一般过去时的被动语态.

---

[1] https://www.npr.org/templates/story/story.php?storyId=6344628

4. it came into use.

简单句，主谓结构，come into use 为动词词组，表示 to start being used by people，也可以说 bring sth. into use.

5. people must have been driven away…

简单句，主谓结构. 请留意这里的 must 表猜测.

[关键句型] have been driven 现在完成时的被动语态，被逼走，不是主动走的.

6. I am one…

简单句，主系表结构，其中 one of 后面接的名词应用复数，这里 people 在表达人们时，单复数同形；表达民族时，需要用复数 peoples；另外，注意与 people's 人民的相区别，我们的国家英文全名为 the People's Republic of China，有两层所有格形式，先是人民的，然后是中国的共和国. 1949 年之前的国名为中华民国，英文名为 the Republic of China，少了"人民的"这一层所有格.

7. I think *that* this house will be knocked down…

复合句，主谓 + 宾语从句结构. 宾语从句省略了 that，该从句主谓结构，用了一般将来时的被动语态，被某架飞过的飞机撞毁. 这里 knock down 如果是说汽车把人撞倒，没问题，但此处 To knock down a building or part of a building means to demolish it. 应作拆除理解，故翻译应用撞毁.

[语法符号讲解] 这里因为省略了引导词 that，我们便在主语 this 的 th 下画横线，表示宾语从句的开始，再在 plane 的 ne 下画横线，并包括句点号进来，表示宾语从句的结束.

8. I have been offered a large sum of money, but I am determined…

并列句，前句为主谓宾 + 宾补结构，是现在完成时的被动语态 have been done，我曾被有关机构提出了一笔搬离的安置款项，课文译文按照汉语习惯用了主动语态，不过原译文用"提供"，有种可以无条件拿赔偿款的感觉，但实际上从上下文看，应该只是一个赔钱走人的选项，并非已经拿了钱了，所以这里改为"提出". 后文 but 表转折，我没有要这笔款项，并决定留下来继续居住，后句为主系表结构.

9. Everybody says *that* I must be mad and they are right.

并列复合句，and 前句为主谓 + 宾语从句，该宾语从句为主系表结构；后句为主系表结构.

[语法符号讲解] 这里 says 后面省略了引导词 that，而宾语从句的主语又只有一个字母 I，故我们在 says 和 I 之间的空格画上横线，表示宾语从句的开始，而在 mad 的 d 下面，以及后面一个空格画上横线，表示宾语从句到此结束.

Lesson 22 A glass envelope 玻璃信封

成长足迹：20＿＿年＿＿月＿＿日

<u>My daughter</u>, {Jane}, [never] <u>dreamed of</u> <u>receiving a letter</u> (from a girl) (of her own age) (in Holland).[1] [Last year], <u>we</u> <u>were travelling</u> [across the Channel] and <u>Jane</u> <u>put</u> <u>a piece of paper</u> (with her name and address on it) [into a bottle].[2] <u>She</u> <u>threw</u> <u>the bottle</u> [into the sea].[3] <u>She</u> [never] <u>thought of</u> <u>it</u> [again], but [ten months later], <u>she</u> <u>received</u> <u>a letter</u> (from a girl) (in Holland).[4] <u>(Both) girls</u> <u>write</u> [to each other] [regularly] [now].[5] [However], <u>they</u> <u>have decided</u> <u>to use</u> <u>the post office</u>.[6] <u>Letters</u> <u>will cost</u> [a little] [more], but <u>they</u> <u>will</u> [certainly] <u>travel</u> [faster].[7]

我的女儿简从未想过会接到荷兰一位同龄女孩的来信。[1] 去年，当我们横渡英吉利海峡时，简把写有她姓名和住址的一张纸条装进了一个瓶子里，[2] 又将瓶子扔进了大海。[3] 此后她就再没去想那个瓶子。[4] 但10个月以后，她收到了一位在荷兰的女孩寄来的信。[4] 现在这两位姑娘定期通信了。[5] 然而她们还是决定通过邮局寄信。[6] 这样会稍微多花点钱，但肯定（是比漂流瓶）快得多了。[7]

1. My daughter dreamed of receiving a letter…

简单句，主谓宾结构，其中 dreamed of 可以看作动词短语作谓语，而动名词短语 receiving sth. 则作介词 of 的宾语，后面 from a girl 是修饰 a letter 的定语，而 of her own age 以及 in Holland 为修饰 a girl 的定语.

Jane 是常用的女生名，名著 *Jane Eyre* 就是 Eyre 为姓，Jane 为名，所以中文书名《简·爱》有个"·".

[关键句型] 本课学习后面可跟 of, from, in 和 on 的动词表达，本句的 of 需要留意，教材中给出了非常多的动词总结，建议查阅.

2. we were travelling and Jane put a piece of paper…

并列句，主谓宾结构. paper 作纸张之意时为不可数名词，要用 a piece of 来表达；论文之意时，为可数名词. with 引导的短语教材中已作讲解，此处略.

3. She threw the bottle…

简单句，主谓宾结构.

4. She thought of it, but…, she received a letter.

并列句，这里两个句子中间有连词 but，其前后都有逗号，如果没有 but 等连词，直接试图用逗号连接两个句子是不合适的.

5. girls write…

简单句，主谓结构.

6. they have decided to use the post office.

简单句，主谓宾结构，谓语动词用了现在完成时，后跟动词不定式短语作宾语. 毕竟"漂流瓶联系"还是不靠谱. 动词不定式短语我们予以细分 ~~to~~ use the post office.

7. Letters will cost, but they will travel…

并列句，两句均为主谓结构，也都有副词作状语修饰动词.

[学习提示] cost 一词值得你认真查一次字典，看看其名词和动词的意思，过去式和过去分词是不是都是一样的，快去查一下吧.

Lesson 23 A new house 新居

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

I had a letter (from my sister) [yesterday].¹ She lives [in Nigeria].² [In her letter], she said that she would come to England [next year].³ [If she comes,] she will get a surprise.⁴ We are [now] living [in a beautiful new house] (in the country).⁵ Work (on it) had begun [before my sister left.]⁶ The house was completed [five months ago].⁷ [In my letter], I told her that she could stay [with us].⁸ The house has (many large) rooms and there is a (lovely) garden.⁹ It is a (very modern) house, so it looks strange [to some people].¹⁰ It must be the (only modern) house (in the district).¹¹

昨天我收到了姐姐的一封信，¹她住在尼日利亚。²在信中她说她明年将到英国来。³如果她来了，她会感到非常惊喜了。⁴我们现在住在乡间的一栋漂亮的新房子里。⁵这栋房子在我姐姐离开之前就已动工了，⁶是在 5 个月以前竣工的。⁷我在信中告诉她，她可以和我们住在一起。⁸这栋房子里有许多房间，还有一个漂亮的花园。⁹它是一栋非常现代化的房子，因此对有些人而言显得古怪。¹⁰它肯定是这个地区唯一的现代化房子。¹¹

1. I had a letter…

简单句，主谓宾结构.

3. she said that she would come to England…

复合句，主句主谓 + 宾语从句结构，that 引导的宾语从句也是主谓宾结构，这里 come to 为不及物动词 + 介词构成的动词短语作谓语.

[关键句型] 本句主句复习第 15 课间接引语.

4. If she comes, she will get a surprise.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，从句是 if 引导的条件状语从句，主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本句主句复习第 12 课一般将来时. 本句的 if 条件句复习第 16 课.

5. We are living…

简单句，主谓结构.

6. Work had begun before my sister left.

复合句，主句主谓结构，work 在这里为名词，后面的 on it 为后置定语，用来修饰 work. 从句为 before 引导的时间状语从句，为主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本句主句复习第 14 课过去完成时.

7. The house was completed…

简单句，主谓结构，用了一般过去时的被动语态.

[关键句型] 本句谓语部分复习第 21 课的被动语态.

8. I told her that she could stay…

复合句，主句主谓宾 ＋ that 引导的宾语从句结构，stay 在这里为不及物动词.

9. The house has rooms and there is a garden.

并列句，前句为主谓宾结构，and 后面是 there be 句型. 对于 there be 句型的句子成分分析，本书采用 there 作为形式主语的观点，在 there 下画双横线，而后面 a garden 是真正的主语，也画双横线. 实际学习中，知道这是表存在的 there be 句型即可.

10. It is a house, so it looks strange.

并列句，均为主系表结构.

11. It must be the house…

简单句，主系表结构，only 在这里跟 modern 一起均为形容词作定语.

[关键句型] 本句的 must 复习第 17 课的用法.

Lesson 24 It could be worse 不幸中之万幸

成长足迹：20＿＿年＿＿月＿＿日

I entered the (hotel manager's) office and sat [down].[1] I had [just] lost £50 and I felt [very] upset.[2] 'I left the money [in my room],' I said, 'and it's not there [now].'[3] The manager was sympathetic, but he could do nothing.[4] 'Everyone's losing money [these days],' he said.[5] He started to complain about this wicked world but was interrupted [by a knock] (at the door).[6] A girl came in and put an envelope [on his desk].[7] It contained £50.[8] 'I found this [outside this gentleman's room],' she said.[9] 'Well,' I said [to the manager], 'there is [still] some honesty [in this world]!'[10]

我走进酒店经理的办公室，并坐了下来。[1]我刚刚丢了 50 英镑，感到非常烦恼。[2]"我把钱放在房间里，"我说，"可现在不见了。"[3]经理深表同情，但却无能为力。[4]"现在大家都在丢钱，"他说。[5]他开始抱怨起这个变坏的世道来，却被一阵敲门声打断了。[6]一个姑娘走了进来，把一个信封放在了他桌上。[7]它里面装着 50 英镑。[8]"这是我在这位先生的房门外捡到的，"她说。[9]"是啊，"我对那位经理说，"这世界上还是有诚实可言的！"[10]

0. 标题

It could be worse. 简单句，主系表结构.

1. I entered the office and sat…

并列句，主谓宾结构，down 为方位副词，作状语.

2. I had lost £50 and I felt upset.

并列句，and 前面这句为主谓宾结构，后面为主系表结构. 本句为过去完成时，had done，lost 为 lose 的过去分词，这里是不见了之意，也有输了的意思. 此外，£为英镑的货币符号，如同￥是人民币符号. 需要注意的是，$代表 Dollar，并不一定仅指美元，在美国境内，只用$时，代表美元没问题，在美国境外，该符号可以加上一些定语一起使用，比如我所在的中国香港特区，港元英文为 Hong Kong Dollar，符号为 HK$或 HKD. 而对于人民币而言，人民币本身并没有一个统一的英文缩写，金融行业常用 RMB 和 CNY 表示.

[学习提示] 在这个阶段一定一定要多翻阅字典.

3. I left the money and it's not there.

并列句，and 连接的两句跟上一句一样，都是先主谓宾结构，后主系表结构，不过

这里是 there 副词作表语. 直接引语部分其实是 I said 的宾语从句，本处不予标记.

4. The manager was sympathetic, but he could do nothing.

but 连接的并列句，前句主系表结构，后句主谓宾结构.

6. He started to complain… but was interrupted…

并列句, but 前句为主谓宾结构，其中动词不定式短语作宾语, to complain 是不定式，而 complain 本身是及物动词，后面带有自己的宾语. but 后句为省略了主语的被动语态，被打断了. at the door 为介词短语作后置定语来修饰这个敲门声是来自哪里的.

7. A girl came in and put an envelope…

并列句，came in 为动词短语作谓语.

10. there is some honesty…

There be 句型，表示存在.

单元复习

本课为复习课，教材 P105 的 SD 难点栏目提供了复习例句，本部分摘录供早读背记使用，斜体为正确词汇，所有句子均标记语法符号.

1. I *received* a letter (from him) [yesterday]. 我昨天收到他寄的一封信.

2. I met Harry [*on the* way] (to the station). 我在去车站的路上遇到了哈里.

3. [*On the* way] (from Athens to London), the plane stopped [at Rome]. 从雅典到伦敦的航程，飞机在罗马经停.

4. Everybody *believes* he will win. 每个人都相信他能赢.

5. Is your watch made *of* gold? 你的手表是金子做的吗？

6. [At the end of the month] I received my *salary*. 月底，我收到了我的工资.

7. Can you *lend* me £5? 你能借给我 5 英镑吗？

8. I *asked for* an explanation. 我要求得到一个解释.

9. [*Apart from* that], everything is all right. 除此以外，一切正常.

10. He is such an *irritable* person. He is [always] bad tempered. 他就是这样一个易怒的人. 他总是发脾气.

11. <u>The police</u> *are* <u>looking for</u> <u>him</u>. 警察正在通缉他.

12. <u>Please</u> *pay attention to* <u>the blackboard</u>. 请注意黑板上的内容.

13. *Remember* <u>me</u> [to your mother]. 请代我向您母亲问好.

14. <u>Father</u> <u>bought</u> <u>a new *suit*</u> [yesterday]. 爸爸昨天买了一套新西服.

15. [When <u>I</u> *grow up*] <u>I</u> <u>shall be</u> <u>a pilot</u>. 等我长大，我将当飞行员.

16. <u>He</u> <u>was standing</u> [*beside* the window]. 他站在窗户边上.

17. *It's* <u>a</u> [very] (*exciting*) <u>film</u>. 这是一部非常精彩的电影.

18. <u>He</u> <u>does</u> [not] *understand* <u>English</u>. 他不懂英语.

19. <u>It</u> <u>was raining</u> [heavily] so <u>I</u> <u>was glad</u> [to get *home*]. 当时下着大雨，所以我很高兴能回到家中.

20. *There* *is* <u>someone</u> <u>at the door</u>. 有个人在门口.

Unit 1 Special Lesson 第 1 单元特别课文
Granny Forbes 格兰尼·福布斯

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[学习提示] 本书共 4 个单元，教材中在每个单元的「致学生」中均提供了一篇范文，该文章与同单元的课文难度相当，故本书将四个单元的范文均予以收录并逐句划分句子成分. 本文特点鲜明，全部使用一般过去时.

Mrs. Forbes was [very] old and [very] poor.¹ Everybody (in the neighbourhood) called her <Granny Forbes> and tried to help her.² Some neighbours came in [each day] and cooked meals [for her].³ Others came and cleaned her room.⁴ There was [little] furniture [in her room].⁵ It was small, dark, and [almost] empty.⁶ There was a bed and a table, and there were two chairs.⁷ [In winter], neighbours [sometimes] brought coal and lit a fire, but Granny's room was [often] [very] cold.⁸ Granny lived [in poverty] [all her life].⁹ She died [at the age of eighty-four].¹⁰ [Then] her neighbours got a (big) surprise.¹¹ She left £50,000!¹² [1]

福布斯太太岁数很大了，且穷困潦倒。¹她的邻居都叫她格兰尼·福布斯，也都尽量帮助她。²一些邻居每天会来她家里为她做饭。³还有些邻居会来她的房间帮她打扫卫生。⁴她的房间几乎没有家具。⁵她的屋子狭小，阴暗，近乎家徒四壁。⁶房里有一张床和一张桌子，桌子配了两把椅子。⁷在冬天，邻居有时会给她带些煤来，并为她生火，可格兰尼的房间时常冰冷。⁸格兰尼在贫困中度过了此生。⁹她在 84 岁那年离世。¹⁰后来，邻居们非常意外的是，¹¹格兰尼竟然留下了 5 万英镑！¹²

1. Mrs. Forbes was old and poor.

简单句，主系表结构. was 在这里表示本句为一般过去时.

这里复习一下第 6 课对人名的讲解，Forbes 是文中主人公的姓氏，一般来说，Mrs. 后面所接的，应该是其夫姓. 西方有些女性在结婚之后，会把自己的姓改为丈夫的姓氏，以此成为同姓的一家人. 自己原本跟父亲的姓氏就不用了，在填写个人资料时，常常有婚前姓一栏需要列明. 中国香港特区第五任行政长官林郑月娥便是郑月娥冠夫姓而成，加上了丈夫林兆波的姓氏，因此也常称其为林太，便是此意. Mrs. Forbes 即 Forbes 太太，未婚女性不用 Mrs.，而用 Miss 小姐，或 Ms.女士.

---

[1] 选自《新概念英语 2》，北京：外语教学与研究出版社 2019.7. 第 11 页.

2. Everybody called her Granny Forbes and tried to help her…

并列句，and 连接两个简单句. called 和 tried 均表示本句为一般过去时.

这里 Granny 有奶奶的意思，但这里不能直接翻译成福布斯奶奶，从下文 Granny's room 可知，格兰尼是其名字，并非昵称.

3. Some neighbours came in and cooked meals…

并列句，and 连接两个简单句，前句为主谓结构；后句为省略了主语的主谓宾结构.

4. Others came and cleaned her room.

简单句，主谓宾结构，其中谓语动词为并列的两个动作，均为一般过去时.

5. There was little furniture…

There be 句型，这里 there 作语法主语，只是一种划分，即便不标记也不影响理解. little 为否定意义，并没有什么家具.

7. There was a bed and a table, and there were two chairs.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，两句都是 there be 句型.

8. neighbours brought coal and lit a fire, but Granny's room was cold.

并列句，这里 and 和 but 作连词，连接三个句子. 前两句均为主谓宾结构，最后是主系表结构，全都用的一般过去时. bring-brought-brought.

11. her neighbours got a surprise.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

Unit Two (Lesson25-48) 第 2 单元（第 25-48 课）千锤百炼，熟能生巧！
欢迎语　最好的时间就是现在

吴应时 2022 年 3 月 26 日

很多人遇到挫折，想要改变的时候，第一个想法就是觉得后悔，来不及了，没时间了。要是能回到过去某个时间重新开始，自己一定能如何，肯定不会再这样浪费时间，错过机会了。可是，这样的感想，如果没有任何行动的话，在人的一生中，很可能还会出现很多次。

有一句流传得很广的话，叫做种一棵树，最好的时间是十年前，其次就是现在。当然，有些树并非每个季节都适合栽种，但这里面蕴含的道理值得我们借鉴。我们想学好英语，不论你现在是小学生、中学生、大学生，甚至是工作党，只要想学，就从今天开始，就从新概念 2 背起。今天再晚开始也是今天，明天再早开始也是明天了。耐克有一句广告语，[Yesterday] you said tomorrow. 这句话说得直击人心。古人也说过类似的话语，明日复明日，明日何其多。不要把今天就可以开始的事情拖到明天。

学习的好坏，最为重要的是学习的习惯，所谓好习惯，其本质是一种良好的行动。**注意，是行动。**比如每天早起读英语，这是两个好习惯，一个是早起这个行动；另一个是读英语。这两个行动都有动词在里面。一天能做到，那么天天都能做到。只要在规定的时间做规定的事情即可。比如你早上 7 点起来，洗漱之后，7 点 20 到 7 点 50，这半小时必须先读英语，读完才能开始新的一天。这样一来，你就至少保证了每天都可以学半小时的英语，不论工作忙不忙，学业紧不紧。只有时间段保证好了，才能把计划推进下去。

不要学了一会儿就觉得没效果，就烦躁，如果真的那么简单，英语也没必要以一种人才挑选工具，或者说淘汰工具的作用出现在中国了。正是因为英语学习不可一蹴而就，不能速成，用这个作为考试的科目才能起到挑选人才的作用。虽然我们按照逻辑来说，英语好的并非都是人才。

在学习初期，往往都是学习时间无法保证才导致学习效果不理想的，所以，少看一些别人的经验，少刷手机，尤其不要太在乎表演学习的"学习型博主"，一方面容易增加你的焦虑，另一方面，耽误了你本应该花在学习上的时间。只有时间和你的注意力，才是你真正拥有的东西。哪怕你日后拥有万贯家财，你的时间和注意力也是有限的，所有互联网公司推出的产品，本质上都在争夺你的时间。玩手游的时间和学习的时间是无法重叠的，是此消彼长的，花在手游上的时间多了，自然能花在学习上的时间就少了。

时间的投资跟财务投资还不一样，资金雄厚的人，在投资具体的项目上，是可以有冗余的。比如一个项目需要 1 个亿的启动资金，这个人有 10 个亿，那么他其实是有 9 亿冗余资金的，他的生活不会因为投资受到任何影响。而我们都只有 24 小时，所以，请把握好属于你的时间，从现在就开始学习。◇

Lesson 25 Do the English speak English? 英国人讲的是英语吗？

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

I arrived [in London] [at last].¹ The railway station was big, black and dark.² I did not know the way (to my hotel), so I asked a porter.³ I not only spoke English [very carefully], but [very clearly] [as well].⁴ The porter, [however], could [not] understand me.⁵ I repeated my question [several times] and [at last] he understood.⁶ He answered me, but he spoke neither [slowly] nor [clearly].⁷ 'I am a foreigner,' I said.⁸ [Then] he spoke [slowly], but I could not understand him.⁹ My teacher [never] spoke English [like that]!¹⁰ The porter and I looked at each other and smiled.¹¹ [Then] he said something and I understood it.¹² 'You'll [soon] learn English!' he said.¹³ I wonder.¹⁴ [In England], (each) person speaks a (different) language.¹⁵ The English understand each other, but I don't understand *them*!¹⁶ Do they speak English?¹⁷

我终于到了伦敦。¹ 火车站很大，又黑又暗。² 我不知道去饭店的路该怎么走，于是向一个搬运工打听。³ 我的英语讲得不但非常认真，而且咬字也非常清楚。⁴ 然而搬运工却不明白我的话。⁵ 我把问话重复了很多遍。⁶ 他终于听懂了。⁶ 他回答了，但他讲得既不慢也不清楚。⁷ "我是个外国人，"我说。⁸ 于是他说得慢了，可我还是听不懂。⁹ 我的老师从来不那样讲英语!¹⁰ 我和搬运工相视一笑。¹¹ 接着，他说了点什么，这回我听懂了。¹² "您会很快学会英语的!"他说。¹³ 我感到奇怪。¹⁴ 在英国，人们各自说着一种不同的语言。¹⁵ 英国人之间相互听得懂，可**我**却不懂**他们**的话!¹⁶ 他们说的是英语吗? ¹⁷

0. 标题

Do the English speak English? 一般疑问句，与第 17 句一致.

1. I arrived…

简单句，主谓结构.

[学习提示] 已进入第二单元，很多简单句，比如主谓宾结构和主系表结构的短句，本单元及以后基本上不作额外分析，仅在文中标记句子成分即可.

2. The railway station was big, black and dark.

简单句，主谓宾结构. 前面两句可以改为定语从句，I [finally] arrived [in London railway station], (which was big, black and dark.)

3. I did not know the way, so I asked a porter.

并列句，so 前面一句为主谓宾结构，有一个 to 引导的介词短语作后置定语；后一句为主谓宾结构，这里 porter 作搬运工解，还有酒店门卫、卧铺车厢服务员等意思.

[关键句型] 本课复习并列句的语序，这里是两个简单句连接成一个并列句，均使用陈述句语序.

4. I not only spoke English… but…

并列句，用 not only…but 作为连接词，而后面这句省略了动词 spoke，直接用副词 clearly 作状语修饰 spoke 说得怎样. 这里 not only…but also 有各种变体，本句省略了 also，所以在后面加了 as well.

[关键句型] 从本句可以看出并列句的连接，可以通过 and, but, so, yet, or, both…and, either…or, neither…nor, not only…but…as well 等方式予以连接.

5. The porter could not understand me.

简单句，主谓宾结构，中间加了一个 however，表转折.

6. I repeated my question and he understood.

并列句，均为主谓（宾）结构.

7. He answered me, but he spoke…

并列句，均为主谓（宾）结构. but 后句用了否定连接词，表示既不也不.

[关键句型] 本句通过 but 和 neither…nor 予以连接.

9. he spoke, but I could not understand him.

并列句，前句为主谓结构，but 后面是主谓宾结构.

10. My teacher spoke English…

简单句，主谓宾结构.

11. The porter and I looked at each other and smiled.

并列句，主句主谓宾，and 后句省略了主语，只有谓语 smiled. 两句的时态都是一般过去时，保持了一致. 这里的 I 作为主语，一般而言用主格，在非正式的文本中，此处可以用宾格，the porter and me.

12. he said something and I understood it.

并列句，前句主谓结构，后句主谓宾结构.

13. You'll learn English!

简单句，主谓宾结构.

14. I wonder.

简单句，主谓结构，表示我很疑惑.

15. each person speaks a language.

简单句，主谓宾结构，each person 是单数，所以 speak 要用 speaks.

16. The English understand each other, but I don't understand them!

并列句，均为主谓宾结构. 这里 The English 表示英国人.

17. Do they speak English?

一般疑问句，主谓宾结构. 说英语的国家很多，如英国、爱尔兰；美国、加拿大；澳大利亚、新西兰、南非. 这些国家所使用的英语，在很多词汇的用法和习惯上均有差异. 本文所遇到的问题则是在于英国是否全都讲统一的英语，为什么外国人到了英国听不懂呢. 有可能是这些原因：一、作者老师是美国人，教的英语以美式为主，而英语水平有限的话，一下子听英音适应不过来[1]；二、英国人本身不同地方有不同的口音以及方言[2]，在伦敦的搬运工并不一定就是伦敦本地人，可能是英国别的地方来的人；三、英国本身也有人说别的语言.

---

[1] https://www.ef.com/wwen/blog/language/why-us-and-uk-english-sound-so-different/
[2] https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Languages_of_the_United_Kingdom

Lesson 26 The best art critics 最佳艺术评论家

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[1]I am an art student and I paint (a lot of) pictures.[1] Many people pretend that they understand (modern) art.[2] They [always] tell you what a picture is 'about'.[3] ^Of course^, many pictures are not 'about' anything.[4] They are [just] (pretty) patterns.[5] We like them [in the same way] ([that] we like (pretty) curtain material.)[6] I think that young children [often] appreciate modern pictures [better than anyone else].[7] They notice [more].[8] My sister is [only] seven, but she [always] tells me whether my pictures are good or not.[9] She came into my room [yesterday].[10]

[1]我是个学艺术的学生，画了很多画。[1] 有很多人装成很懂现代艺术的样子，[2]总是告诉你一幅画的"意思"是什么。[3]当然，有很多画是什么"意思"也没有的。[4] 它们就是些好看的图案，[5]我们喜爱它们就像我们喜欢漂亮的窗帘布一样。[6]我觉得小孩子们往往比任何人都更能欣赏现代绘画，[7]他们观察到的东西更多。[8]我的妹妹只有 7 岁，但她总能说出我的画是好还是坏。[9]昨天她到了我的房间。[10]

（*To be continued* 未完待续）

1. I am an art student and I paint pictures.

并列句，主谓宾结构.

2. Many people pretend that they understand art.

复合句，主句主谓 + 宾语从句结构，that 引导的宾语从句也是主谓宾结构.

3. They tell you what a picture is about.

复合句，主句主谓 + 双宾语结构，其中直接宾语是 what 引导的宾语从句，该宾语从句是主系表结构.

[关键句型] 表示经常发生的事情，比如本句的 always.

6. We like them…that we like curtain material.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，这里 in the same way that 为介词短语作方式状语，可以理解为修饰主句谓语，表示喜欢的具体方式是什么. 这个方式状语中，有一个 that 引导的定语从句修饰 way，其中 that 为关系副词，相当于 in which，在该定语从句中作方式状语.

7. I think that young children appreciate modern pictures.

复合句，主谓 + 宾语从句结构，宾语从句为主谓宾结构，有一个比较状语在里面.

9. My sister is seven, but she tells me whether…

　　并列复合句，but 连接前后两句，前句为主系表结构，后句为主谓 + 双宾语结构，句中 tell 是告诉之意，whether 引导宾语从句，该从句为主系表结构.

　　这里正好用到了 tell 一词，tell 还有辨别、区分的意思，本句如果表达她可以从一堆画作里面辨别出我画的，则可以这么说：<u>She</u> <u>can</u> [always] <u>tell</u> <u>my pictures</u> [from others]. 她总是能将我的画跟别人的画辨别出来. 该意思可以参看本书第 42 课.

10. She came into my room…

　　简单句，主谓宾结构.

---

　　[2]'<u>What</u> <u>are</u> <u>you</u> <u>doing</u>?' <u>she</u> <u>asked</u>.[1]

　　[3]'<u>I'm</u> <u>hanging</u> <u>this picture</u> [on the wall],' <u>I</u> <u>answered</u>.[2] '<u>It's</u> <u>a</u> <u>new</u> <u>one</u>.[3] <u>Do</u> <u>you</u> <u>like</u> <u>it</u>?'[4]

　　[4]<u>She</u> <u>looked at</u> <u>it</u> [critically] [for a moment].[5] '<u>It's</u> <u>all right</u>,' <u>she</u> <u>said</u>, 'but <u>isn't</u> <u>it</u> [upside down]?'[6]

　　[5]<u>I</u> <u>looked at</u> <u>it</u> [again].[7] <u>She</u> <u>was</u> <u>right</u>![8] <u>It</u> <u>was</u>![9]

　　[2]"你在干什么呢？"她问。[1]

　　[3]"我正在把这幅画挂到墙上去，"我回答说。[2]"这是幅新画，[3]你喜欢么？"[4]

　　[4]她用挑剔的目光看了一会儿。[5]"还可以吧。"[6]她说，"不过，是不是挂倒了？"[6]

　　[5]我再次看了看画。[7]她说对了！[8]是挂倒了！[9]

---

1. what are you doing…

　　疑问句，主谓宾结构.

2. I'm hanging this picture…

　　简单句，主谓宾结构.

5. She looked at it…

　　简单句，主谓结构.

6. It's all right, but isn't it…

　　并列句，but 引导的并列句，前句主系表结构，后句主谓结构. 这里的 upside down 就是颠倒的词组，但我们可以从语法的角度来理解，upside 如果作为主词，那么 down 就是一个去修饰 upside 的后置定语，原本一个往上的东西，却被后置定语修饰得往下了，所以在意义上就颠倒了.

Lesson 27 A wet night 雨夜

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[Late in the afternoon], the boys put up their tent [in the middle of a field].¹ [As soon as this was done,] they cooked a meal [over an open fire].² They were {all} hungry and the food smelled good.³ [After a wonderful meal], they told stories and sang songs [by the campfire].⁴ But [some time later] it began to rain.⁵ The boys felt tired [so they put out the fire and crept [into their tent].]⁶ Their sleeping bags were warm and comfortable, so they {all} slept [soundly].⁷ [In the middle of the night], two boys woke up and began shouting.⁸ The tent was full of water!⁹ They {all} leapt [out of their sleeping bags] and hurried [outside].¹⁰ It was raining [heavily] and they found that a stream had formed [in the field].¹¹ The stream wound its way [across the field] and [then] flowed [right] [under their tent]!¹²

傍晚时分，孩子们在田野中央搭起了帐篷。¹这件事刚刚做完，他们就在篝火上烧起了饭。²他们全都饿了，饭菜散发出阵阵香味。³他们美美地吃了一顿饭后，就围在营地篝火旁讲起了故事，唱起了歌。⁴但过了一阵子，天下起雨来。⁵孩子感到困卷了，于是他们扑灭了篝火，钻进了帐篷。⁶睡袋既暖和又舒服，所以，他们都睡得很香。⁷午夜前后，有两个孩子醒了，大声叫了起来。⁸原来帐篷里到处都是水！⁹他们全都跳出睡袋，跑到外面。¹⁰雨下得很大，他们发现地上已经形成了一条小溪。¹¹那小溪弯弯曲曲穿过田野，然后正好从他们的帐篷底下流过去。¹²

1. the boys put up their tent.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

2. As soon as this was done, they cooked a meal.

复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，as soon as 引导了一个时间状语从句，为主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本课复习一般过去时，本句 was 和 cooked 都是该时态的用法.

3. They were hungry and the food smelled good.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，均为主系表结构，也都是一般过去时.

5. it began to rain.

简单句，主谓宾结构，begin-began-begun.

6. The boys felt tired so they put out the fire and crept…

71

复合句，主句主谓结构，后面是 so 引导的结果状语从句，该从句为并列句，讲了两个动作，第一个是熄灭篝火，第二个是爬进帐篷.

7. Their sleeping bags were warm and comfortable, so they slept.

并列句，so 连接前后两个句子，有一个递进关系.

11. It was raining and they found that a stream had formed.

并列复合句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓结构，后句为主谓 + 宾语从句结构，该宾语从句为主谓结构. find 的过去式为 found，这里可以补充一下，found 本身也是一个动词，成立的意思，如果要用成立的过去式，则是 founded.

12. The stream wound its way and flowed…

并列句，均为主谓宾结构，前句中 wound 是 wind 的过去式，to have many bends and twists，蜿蜒之意，wind 作名词是风、管乐器之意，这类小词可以好好查查字典，把每一个义项都积累下来.

Lesson 28 No parking 禁止停车

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Jasper White is one of those rare people (who believes in ancient myths.)¹ He has [just] bought a (new) house [in the city], but [ever since he moved in,] he has had trouble [with cars and their owners].² [When he returns [home] [at night],] he [always] finds that someone has parked a car [outside his gate].³ [Because of this], he has [not] been able to get (his own) car [into his garage] [even once].⁴ Jasper has put up 'No Parking' signs [outside his gate], but these have [not] had any effect.⁵ [Now] he has put an (ugly stone) head [over the gate].⁶ It is one of the ugliest faces (I have [ever] seen.)⁷ I asked him what it was and he told me that it was Medusa, {the Gorgon}.⁸ Jasper hopes that she will turn cars and their owners [to stone].⁹ But none of them has been turned [to stone] [yet]!¹⁰

贾斯珀·怀特是一个少有的相信古代神话的人。¹ 他刚在城里买下一所新房子，但自从搬进去后，就和汽车及车主们发生了磨擦。² 当他夜里回到家时，总是发现有人把车停在他家大门外。³ 为此，他甚至一次也没能把自己的车开进车库。⁴ 贾斯珀曾把几块"禁止停车"的牌子挂在大门外边，但没有任何效果。⁵现在他把一个丑陋的石雕头像放在了大门上边，⁶ 这个头像的长相算是我见过最丑的了。⁷ 我问他那是什么？⁸ 他告诉我那是蛇发女怪美杜莎。⁸ 贾斯珀希望她把汽车和车主们都变成石头。⁹ 但到目前为止还没有一个变成石头呢！¹⁰

1. Jasper White is one who believes in ancient myths.

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是 who 引导的定语从句，主谓宾结构，修饰 one，也就是补充说明这个人信这些神话故事. 本文很多 one of + n. 的表达，请注意，后面的名词一定要用复数形式，此外，在翻译的时候，并非一定要翻译"之一"，中文表达并不需要如此对应，比如 I am one of the students in my school. 只需要说我是我们学校的学生即可，不需要加"之一"，本句中表示是一个信这些东西的人即可.

2. He has bought a house, but ever since he moved in, he has had trouble…

并列复合句，以 but 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构，后句则为复合句，主句是主谓结构，而从句是 ever since 引导的状语从句，表时间，自从他们搬进来，主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本课复习现在完成时，have/has + done 形式，本句 has bought 就是该表达；后句 has had trouble 也是如此，该句中的 had 就是 have 的过去分词，第一个 has

就是因为用了第三人称单数 he 作主语，所以 have 需要转为 has.

3. When he returns, he finds that someone has parked a car…

复合句,主句是主谓 + 宾语从句结构,最前面是一个 when 引导的时间状语从句,主谓结构,后面则是 that 引导的宾语从句,主谓宾结构.

4. he has been able to get car.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本句 has been 即为现在完成时.

5. Jasper has put up 'No Parking' signs, but these have had any effect.

简单句,主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本句 has put 为现在完成时，因为 put-put-put，其过去分词也是 put，需要留意；后句 have had 也是现在完成时.

7. It is one of the ugliest faces I have seen.

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是一个定语从句，修饰 faces. 本句的 one of 同样没必要翻译"之一"两字，这个样子就是主人公见过最丑的了，你理解成最丑的有好多个即可，并不需要额外强调是其中一个. 此处的形容词 ugly 用了最高级 ugliest，比较级是 uglier.

[关键句型] 本句 have seen 为现在完成时，see-saw-seen.

8. I asked him what it was and he told me that it was Medusa.

并列复合句，and 连接前后两个复合句，前句为主谓宾 + 宾语从句结构,ask 接双宾语，what 引导的宾语从句，what 本身在该从句中作表语，相当于是 it was what.

后句也是同样的双宾语结构，that 引导的宾语从句中，that 不作成分，该从句为主系表结构.

9. Jasper hopes that she will turn cars and their owners.

复合句，主谓 + 宾语从句结构，该宾语从句为主谓宾结构.

10. none of them has been turned

简单句，主谓结构，现在完成时的被动语态.

Lesson 29 Taxi! 出租汽车

成长足迹：20＿＿年＿＿月＿＿日

Captain Ben Fawcett <u>has bought</u> an (unusual) taxi and <u>has begun</u> a (new) service.¹ The 'taxi' <u>is</u> a (small Swiss) aeroplane (called a 'Pilatus Porter').² This (wonderful) plane <u>can carry</u> seven passengers.³ The (most surprising) thing (about it), [however], <u>is</u> that <u>it</u> <u>can land</u> [anywhere]: {on snow, water, or even on a ploughed field}.⁴ (Captain Fawcett's first) passenger <u>was</u> a <u>doctor</u> (<u>who</u> <u>flew</u> [from Birmingham] [to a lonely village] (in the Welsh mountains).)⁵ [Since then], Captain Fawcett <u>has flown</u> passengers [to many unusual places].⁶ [Once] <u>he</u> <u>landed</u> [on the roof] (of a block of flats) and [on another occasion], <u>he</u> <u>landed</u> [in a deserted car park].⁷ Captain Fawcett <u>has</u> [just] <u>refused</u> a (strange) request (from a businessman).⁸ The man wanted to fly to Rockall, {a lonely island in the Atlantic Ocean}, but Captain Fawcett <u>did not take</u> him [because <u>the trip</u> <u>was</u> <u>too</u> <u>dangerous</u>.]⁹

本·弗西特机长买了一辆不同寻常的出租汽车，并开始了一项新的业务。¹这辆"出租汽车"是一架小型瑞士飞机，叫"皮勒特斯·波特"号。²这架超棒的飞机可以载7名乘客。³然而，最令人惊奇的是它能够在任何地方降落：雪地上，水面上，甚至刚耕过的田里。⁴弗西特机长的第一名乘客是位医生，他从伯明翰飞往威尔士山区一个偏僻的村庄。⁵从那时开始，弗西特机长已经载送乘客到过许多不寻常的地方。⁶一次，他把飞机降落在了一栋公寓楼的屋顶上；还有一次，降落在了一个废弃的停车场上。⁷弗西特机长刚刚拒绝了一位商人的奇怪要求。⁸这个人想要飞往大西洋上的一个孤岛——罗卡尔岛，弗西特机长之所以不送他去，是因为那段飞行太危险了。⁹

1. Captain Ben Fawcett has bought a taxi and has begun a service.

并列句，均为主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本课对比一般过去时和现在完成时. 本并列句的前后两句 has bought 和 has begun 均为现在完成时.

2. The 'taxi' is an aeroplane.

简单句，主系表结构，后面有个过去分词短语作后置定语.

4. The thing is that it can land…

复合句，主系 + 表语从句结构，从句是主谓结构. a ploughed field 这里，ploughed 是形容词作定语，修饰 field，plough 也写作 plow，而 plough 的过去式为 ploughed，已经被耕种过的了.

5. passenger was a doctor who flew…

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面跟了一个 who 引导的定语从句，为主谓结构.

7. he landed and he landed.

并列句，and 连接的前后两个均为主谓结构的句子，两句的划分并不是以逗号，这个逗号是第二句里面的句中逗号.

[关键句型] 本并列句前后两句 landed 均为一般过去时.

8. Captain Fawcett has refused a request.

简单句，主谓宾结构. 现在完成时.

9. The man wanted to fly to Rockall but Captain Fawcett did not take him because the trip was dangerous.

复合句，but 连接了前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构，动词不定式短语作宾语，一般过去时；but 后面为复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，也是一般过去时，后面跟了一个 because 引导的原因状语从句，主系表结构，也是一般过去时.

Lesson 30 Football or polo? 足球还是水球？

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

The Wayle is a (small) river (that cuts [across the park] (near my home).)[1] I like sitting [by the Wayle] [on fine afternoons].[2] It was warm [last Sunday], so I went and sat [on the river bank] [as usual].[3] Some children were playing games [on the bank] and there were some people (rowing on the river).[4] [Suddenly], one of the children kicked a ball [very hard] and it went [towards a passing boat].[5] Some people (on the bank) called out [to the man] [in the boat], but he did not hear them.[6] The ball struck him [so] [hard] [that he [nearly] fell [into the water].][7] I turned [to look at the children], but there weren't any (in sight): they had {all} run away![8] The man laughed [when he realized what had happened.][9] He called out [to the children] and threw the ball [back to the bank].[10]

威尔河是横穿过我家附近公园的一条小河。[1] 我喜欢在天气晴朗的下午到河边坐坐。[2] 上个星期日天气很暖和。[3] 于是我和往常一样，又去河边坐着。[3] 河岸上有些孩子正在玩耍，河面上有些人正在划船。[4] 突然，一个孩子狠狠地踢了一脚球，球便向着一只划过来的小船飞去。[5] 岸上的一些人对着小船上的人高喊，但他没有听见。[6] 球重重地打在他身上，使他差点儿落入水中。[7] 我转过头去看那些孩子，但一个也不见，全都跑了！[8] 当那个人明白了发生的事情时，笑了起来。[9] 他大声叫着那些孩子，把球扔回到岸上。[10]

1. The Wayle is a river that cuts…

复合句，主句为主系表结构，后面有个 that 引导的定语从句修饰 river，为主谓结构.

[关键句型] 对应第 6 课不定冠词和定冠词的内容，此处河流名称之前应使用定冠词 the.

2. I like sitting…

简单句，主谓宾结构.

3. It was warm, so I went and sat.

并列句，so 作连词，连接前后两句，前句为主系表结构；后句为并列句，and 连接后面这个句子，I went and I sat，很明显，第二句省略了主语 I，均为主谓结构.

4. Some children were playing games and there were some people.

并列句，and 连接两句，前句为主谓宾结构；后句为 there be 句型.

[关键句型] 比较 some 和 any 的用法.

5. one of the children kicked a ball and it went.

并列句，and 连接两句，前句为主谓宾结构；后句为主谓结构，这里的 it 指上句的 a ball，这两句话的主语发生了变化.

6. Some people called out, but he did not hear them.

并列句，but 连接两句，前句是主谓结构；后句为主谓宾结构.

7. The ball struck him so that he fell.

复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，后面是 so…that 结构引导的结果状语从句.

8. I turned, but there weren't any…: they had run away!

并列句，but 连接两句，前句为主谓结构；后句为 there be 句型的否定情况，后面冒号也是一个与本句并列的句子，交待看到了什么情况，该句是主谓结构.

9. The man laughed when he realized what had happened.

复合句，本句在本课中最为复杂，主句为主谓结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，该从句为主谓宾结构，不过宾语是由 what 引导的从句来充当，该宾语从句为主谓结构，what 本身是引导词，也在该宾语从句中作主语.

10. He called out and threw the ball.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓结构，call out 动词词组作谓语；后句为省略了主语的主谓宾结构.

Lesson 31 Success story 成功者的故事

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[Yesterday afternoon] <u>Frank Hawkins</u> <u>was telling</u> <u>me</u> [about his experiences] (as a young man). [1] [Before <u>he</u> <u>retired,</u>] <u>Frank</u> <u>was</u> <u>the head</u> (of a very large business company), but [as a boy] <u>he</u> <u>used to work</u> [in a small shop]. [2] <u>It</u> <u>was</u> <u>his job</u> <u>to repair bicycles</u> and [at that time] <u>he</u> <u>used to work</u> [fourteen hours] [a day]. [3] <u>He</u> <u>saved</u> <u>money</u> [for years] and [in 1958] <u>he</u> <u>bought</u> <u>a (small) workshop</u> (of his own). [4] [In his twenties] <u>Frank</u> <u>used to make</u> <u>spare parts</u> (for aeroplanes). [5] [At that time] <u>he</u> <u>had</u> <u>two helpers</u>. [6] [In a few years] <u>the small workshop</u> <u>had become</u> <u>a (large) factory</u> (<u>which</u> <u>employed</u> <u>seven hundred and twenty-eight people</u>.) [7] <u>Frank</u> <u>smiled</u> [when <u>he</u> <u>remembered</u> (<u>his hard early) years and the (long) road</u> (to success).] [8] <u>He</u> <u>was</u> [still] <u>smiling</u> [when <u>the door</u> <u>opened</u> and <u>his wife</u> <u>came in</u>.] [9] <u>She</u> <u>wanted</u> <u>him</u> <to repair their grandson's bicycle>! [10]

昨天下午弗兰克·霍金斯向我讲述了他年轻时的经历。[1] 在退休前，弗兰克是一家非常大的商业公司的经理，但他小时候却在一家小铺里做工。[2] 他那时的工作是修理自行车，并且通常一天工作 14 个小时。[3] 他靠多年积蓄，于 1958 年买下了一个自己的小铺子。[4] 20 多岁的时候，弗兰克曾生产飞机零配件。[5] 那时他有两个帮手。[6] 几年之后，小铺子已经发展成了一个雇有 728 人的大工厂。[7] 弗兰克回想着他早年的艰难经历和走过的漫长的成功之路，莞尔。[8] 他正笑着的时候门开了，他的妻子走了进来。[9] 她叫他去修理孙子的自行车。[10]

1. Frank Hawkins was telling me…

简单句，主谓宾结构，过去进行时.

2. Before he retired, Frank was the head, but he used to work.

并列复合句，but 连接前后两句，前句为复合句，主句为主系表结构，句首是 before 引导的时间状语从句；后句为主谓结构.

[关键句型] used to do 表示过去经常发生的事情.

3. It was his job to repair bicycles and he used to work.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句中 it 为形式主语，to repair 动词不定式短语为实际主语；后句为简单句，主谓结构.

4. He saved money and he bought a workshop.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，均为主谓宾结构. 因为一直是在讲述他过去的事情，所以均用了动词的过去式，save 转为 saved；buy 转为 bought.

5. Frank used to make spare parts.

简单句，主谓宾结构. 仍然是表示过去经常做的事情.

6. he had two helpers.

简单句，主谓宾结构. 本句的 have 是实义动词，就是指拥有，不是助动词，因此表示过去的情况，用过去式，have 转为 had.

7. the small workshop had become a factory which employed people.

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是 which 引导的定语从句，主谓宾结构. 主句中 had become 是 had done，过去完成时，这里 become-became-become，用的是过去分词.

8. Frank smiled when he remembered…

复合句，主句主谓结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

9. He was smiling when the door opened and his wife came in.

复合句，主句为主谓结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，该从句为并列句，均为主谓结构.

10. She wanted him to repair…

简单句，主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

Lesson 32 Shopping made easy 购物变得很方便

<div align="right">成长足迹：20__年__月__日</div>

People are [not] [so] honest [as they [once] were.]¹ The temptation (to steal) is greater [than ever before] — [especially in large shops].² A detective [recently] watched a (well-dressed) woman (who [always] went [into a large store] [on Monday mornings].)³ [One Monday], there were fewer people [in the shop] [than usual] [when the woman came in,] so it was easier for the detective to watch her.⁴ The woman [first] bought a (few small) articles.⁵ [After a little time], she chose one of the most expensive dresses (in the shop) and handed it [to an assistant] (who wrapped it up [for her] [as quickly as possible].)⁶ [Then] the woman [simply] took the parcel and walked [out of the shop] [without paying].⁷ [When she was arrested,] the detective found out that the shop assistant was her daughter.⁸ The girl 'gave' her mother a (free) dress [once a week]!⁹

人们不再像以前那样诚实了。¹偷窃的诱惑力比以往任何时候都更强烈——特别是在大的商店里。²一名侦探最近注意上了一位穿着讲究的妇女，她总是在星期一上午进入一家大商场。³有一个星期一，当这位妇女走进这家商场时，里面的人比往常少，因此，侦探比较容易监视她。⁴这位妇女先是买了几样小商品。⁵过了一会儿，她又选了商场里最昂贵的一件衣服，把它递给了售货员。⁶那位售货员以最快的速度为她包好了衣服。⁶然后，那妇女拿过包就走出了商场，根本没有付钱。⁷她被逮捕后，侦探发现原来那售货员是她的女儿。⁸那姑娘每星期"送"她母亲一件免费的衣服！⁹

0. 标题

　　我们把标题的短语还原成被动句，Shopping is made to be easy. 标题的 sth. made easy 是常见的标题用法，有一本非常有名的英语词汇书就叫 *Word power made easy*，有兴趣的同学们可以买一本拓展词汇量.

1. People are honest as they were.

　　复合句，主句主系表结构，as 引导比较状语从句，主谓结构，从句因为讲的是过去的人们如何，故用了一般过去时，同时，这里主句的 people 是复数，故从句用 they，系动词用 were 而非 was.

　　人们不如以前那么……了，非常适合背下来成为万能替换句子，比如 People are

[not] [so] p<u>a</u>tient [as <u>they</u> [once] <u>were</u>.] 人们不如以前那么耐心了. 很多作文都可以这么来一句，新概念的课文里面值得替换的句子太多了.

[关键句型] 本课复习比较结构 as…as…

2. The temptation is greater…

简单句，主系表结构.

3. A detective watched a woman who went…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面是 who 引导的定语从句，主谓结构.

4. there were fewer people when the woman came in, so it was easier for…

并列复合句，so 连接前后两句，前句为复合句，主句为 there be 句型，跟一个 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构；后句为主系表结构，it 是形式主语，后面 for 引导的介词短语为真正的主语.

[关键句型] 本句 fewer 的表达需要留意.

6. she chose one and handed it… who wrapped it up…

复合句，主句为并列句，主谓宾结构，有 chose 和 handed 两个并列的谓语. 后面 who 引导的定语从句为主谓宾结构，其中谓语为动词短语 wrap up 担任，代词 it 作宾语，放在短语之间.

[关键句型] as quickly as possible 也是比较结构.

7. the woman took the parcel and walked…

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句主谓宾结构；后句为省略了主语的主谓结构. 这里 without doing sth.或 without sth. 常用于表达没干什么，是讲了一件事情之后，这个表达可以进行补充.

8. When she was arrested, the detective found out that the shop assistant was her daughter.

复合句，主句主谓 ＋that 引导的宾语从句结构，该从句为主系表结构；句首是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构，被动语态，被捕了.

9. The girl 'gave' her mother a dress.

简单句，主谓宾结构，这里 give 接双宾语.

Lesson 33 Out of the darkness 冲出黑暗

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[Nearly] <u>a week</u> <u>passed</u> [before <u>the girl</u> <u>was able to explain</u> <u>what</u> <u>had happened</u> [to <u>her</u>].][1] [One afternoon] <u>she</u> <u>set out</u> [from the coast] [in a small boat] and <u>was caught</u> [in a storm].[2] [Towards evening], <u>the boat</u> <u>struck</u> <u>a rock</u> and <u>the girl</u> <u>jumped</u> [into the sea].[3] [Then] <u>she</u> <u>swam</u> [to the shore] [after spending the whole night in the water].[4] [During that time] <u>she</u> <u>covered</u> <u>a distance</u> (of eight miles).[5] [Early next morning], <u>she</u> <u>saw</u> <u>a light</u> (ahead).[6] <u>She</u> <u>knew</u> <u>she</u> <u>was</u> <u>near the shore</u> [because <u>the light</u> <u>was</u> <u>high up on the cliffs</u>.][7] [On arriving at the shore], <u>the girl</u> <u>struggled</u> [up the cliff] [towards the light] (<u>she</u> <u>had seen</u>.)[8] <u>That</u> <u>was</u> <u>all</u> (<u>she</u> <u>remembered</u>.)[9] [When <u>she</u> <u>woke up</u> [a day later],] <u>she</u> <u>found</u> <u>herself</u> <in hospital>.[10]

几乎过了一个星期，那姑娘才能讲述自己的遭遇。[1] 一天下午，她乘小船从海岸出发，遇上了风暴。[2] 天将黑时，小船撞在了一块礁石上，姑娘跳进了海里。[3] 她在海里游了整整一夜才游到岸边。[4] 在那段时间里，她游了8英里。[5] 第二天凌晨，她看到前方有灯光，[6] 知道自己已经接近岸边了，因为那灯光是在高高的峭壁上。[7] 到达岸边后，姑娘朝着她看到的灯光方向挣扎着往峭壁上爬去。[8] 她所记得的就是这些。[9] 第二天她醒来时，发现自己躺在医院里。[10]

1. a week passed before the girl was able to explain what had happened.

复合句，主句主谓结构，后面是 before 引导的时间状语从句，该从句为主谓宾结构，宾语由 what 引导的从句担任，该宾语从句为主谓结构.

2. she set out…and was caught…

并列句，均为主谓结构.

3. the boat struck a rock and the girl jumped…

并列句，and 连接两句，前句为主谓宾结构；后句为主谓结构

4. she swam…

简单句，主谓结构，后面是介词短语作时间状语，after spending the whole night in the water. 这里 spending 为动名词，作 after 介词宾语，该动名词仍保留动词的性质，故而有自己的宾语 the whole night.

5. she covered a distance.

简单句，主谓宾结构. 本句 cover 一词的用法，第 5 课已予以讲解.

7. She knew she was near the shore because the light was high up on the cliffs.

复合句，主句主谓 + 宾语从句结构，该宾语从句为主系表结构，后面 because 引导原因状语从句，也是主系表结构.

8. the girl struggled…(that) she had seen…

复合句，主句主谓结构，后面有一个省略了引导词 that 的定语从句，主谓结构. 句首是介词短语作状语，arriving 为动名词作介词宾语.

[关键句型] 本课复习各种介词短语，包括 to, from, into, out of, for, towards, at，本句用到了 at 和 towards.

9. That was all (that) she remembered.

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面有一个省略了 that 的定语从句，主谓结构.

10. When she woke up, she found herself in hospital.

复合句，主句主谓宾 + 宾补结构，句首是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构.

Lesson 34 Quick work 破案"神速"

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Dan Robinson has been worried [all week].[1] [Last Tuesday] he received a letter (from the local police).[2] [In the letter] he was asked <to call at the station>.[3] Dan wondered why he was wanted [by the police], but he went [to the station] [yesterday] and [now] he is not worried [anymore].[4] [At the station], he was told [by a (smiling) policeman] that his bicycle had been found.[5] [Five days ago], ^the policeman told him^, the bicycle was picked up [in a small village] (four hundred miles away).[6] It is [now] being sent [to his home] [by train].[7] Dan was [most] surprised [when he heard the news.][8] He was amused [too], [because he [never] expected the bicycle <to be found>.][9] It was stolen [twenty years ago] [when Dan was a boy (of fifteen)!][10]

丹·鲁宾逊焦虑了整整一个星期。[1] 上星期二他收到当地警察局的一封信，[2] 要他到警察局去一趟。[3] 丹奇怪警察为什么找他,但昨天还是去了,结果他一再担心了。[4] 在警察局里,一位面带笑容的警察告诉他,他的自行车找到了。[5] 那位警察对他说,那辆自行车是5天前在400英里外的一个小村里发现的，[6] 现在正用火车给他运回家来。[7] 丹听到这个消息后,惊奇万分,[8] 但又感到非常好笑,因为他从未指望那辆自行车还能找到。[9] 这是 20 年前，丹才 15 岁的时候被人偷走的！[10]

1. Dan Robinson has been worried.

简单句，主系表结构.

2. he received a letter.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

3. he was asked to call…

简单句，主谓 + 主补结构，这里使用了被动语态，原本的宾语补足语在此变成了主语补足语，主动语态为 ask him <to call>…

[关键句型] 复习被动语态，可以参考第 10 课的内容.

4. Dan wondered why he was wanted, but he went and he is not worried.

并列复合句，but 连接前后两句，前句为主谓 + why 引导的宾语从句结构，该从句为主谓结构；后句为并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓结构，后句为主系表结构.

5. he was told that his bicycle had been found.

　　复合句，主句主谓 + that 引导的宾语从句结构，从句则是主谓结构. 主句和从句都用了本课所复习的被动语态.

6. the bicycle was picked up.

　　简单句，主谓结构，这里警察告诉他的句子整体作为插入语，不过该插入成分正好是一个完整的句子，我们予以标记成分，否则逗号不能单独连接两个完整的句子.

　　还有一种理解是把后面这句看作是插入语的宾语从句，但是省略了引导词 that，即 the policeman told him (that) the bicycle was…也讲得通，不过不能有逗号.

7. It is being sent…

　　简单句，主谓结构，用了被动语态，而且是现在进行时的被动语态.

8. Dan was surprised when he heard the news.

　　复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

9. He was amused because he expected the bicycle to be found.

　　复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是 because 引导的原因状语从句，该从句为主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

10. It was stolen when Dan was a boy.

　　复合句，主句主谓结构，被动语态，被偷了，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，为主系表结构.

Lesson 35 Stop thief! 捉贼！

Roy Trenton used to drive a taxi.[1] [A short while ago], [however], he became a bus driver and he has not regretted it.[2] He is finding his new work <far more exciting>.[3] [When he was driving [along Catford Street] [recently],] he saw two thieves <rush out of a shop> and <run> [towards a waiting car].[4] One of them was carrying a bag (full of money).[5] Roy acted [quickly] and drove the bus [straight at the thieves].[6] The one (with the money) got (such) a fright [that he dropped the bag.][7] [As the thieves were trying to get away [in their car,]] Roy drove his bus [into the back of it].[8] [While the battered car was moving away,] Roy stopped his bus and telephoned the police.[9] The thieves' car was [badly] damaged and easy [to recognize].[10] [Shortly afterwards], the police stopped the car and both men were arrested.[11]

罗伊·特雷顿原来是开的士的，[1] 然而就在前不久，他开上了公共汽车，也并不为此而感到后悔。[2] 他发觉自己的新工作令人兴奋得多。[3] 最近，当他正开车在凯特福德街上行驶时，看到有两个小偷从一家商店里冲出来，奔向等在那里的一辆汽车。[4] 其中一个小偷提着一只装满钞票的袋子。[5] 罗伊行动迅速，开车直冲该小偷而去。[6] 提着钱的那个小偷吓得把袋子都扔了。[7] 当那两个小偷企图乘车逃跑时，罗伊驾驶他的公共汽车撞在了那辆车的后尾上。[8] 当那辆被撞坏的车开走后，罗伊停下车，打电话报了警。[9] 小偷的车损坏严重，很容易辨认。[10] 没过多久，警察就截住了那辆车，两个小偷都被抓住了。[11]

1. Roy Trenton used to drive a taxi.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本课为复习课，本句复习第 26 课和第 31 课，表达经常发生的事情.

2. he became a bus driver and he has not regretted it.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主系表结构；后句为主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本句前句复习第 27 课，一般过去时；后句复习第 28 课，现在完成时.

3. He is finding his new work far more exciting.

简单句，主谓宾 + 宾补结构，这里补语中 far 是副词，放在比较级的形容词 more 前面，起一个增强程度的效果.

4. When he was driving, he saw two thieves rush and run.

复合句，主句主谓宾 + 宾补结构，从句是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构.

5. One of them was carrying a bag…

简单句，主谓宾结构，用了过去进行时.

6. Roy acted and drove the bus…

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓结构；后句为省略了主语的主谓宾结构.

7. The one got a fright that he dropped the bag.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面是 such…that 引导的结果状语从句，主谓宾结构.

8. As the thieves were trying to get away, Roy drove his bus…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，句首是 as 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构，动词不定式短语作宾语.

9. While the battered car was moving away, Roy stopped his bus and telephoned the police.

并列复合句，主句为并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构，后句为省略了主语的主谓宾结构. 句首是 while 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构.

10. The thieves' car was damaged and easy.

并列句，前句为主谓结构，用了被动语态；后句为省略了主语和系动词的主系表结构.

[关键句型] 本句复习第 34 课，被动语态.

11. the police stopped the car and both men were arrested.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构；后句为主谓结构.

Lesson 36 Across the Channel　横渡英吉利海峡

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Debbie Hart is going to swim [across the English Channel] [tomorrow].[1] She is going to set out [from the French coast] [at five o'clock] [in the morning].[2] Debbie is [only] eleven years old and she hopes to set up a new world record.[3] She is a (strong) swimmer and many people feel that she is sure [to succeed].[4] Debbie's father will set out [with her] [in a small boat].[5] Mr. Hart has trained his daughter [for years].[6] [Tomorrow] he will be watching her [anxiously] [as she swims the (long) distance [to England].[7] Debbie intends to take short rests [every two hours].[8] She will have something (to drink) but she will not eat any (solid) food.[9] Most of Debbie's school friends will be waiting [for her] [on the English coast].[10] Among them will be Debbie's mother, (who swam the Channel {herself} [when she was a girl.])[11]

黛比·哈特准备明天横渡英吉利海峡。[1] 她打算早上 5 点钟从法国海岸出发。[2] 黛比只有 11 岁大，她希望创造一项新的世界纪录。[3] 她是一个游泳能手，很多人认为她一定能成功。[4] 黛比的父亲将乘一条小船同她一道出发。[5] 哈特先生训练她的女儿已经多年了，[6] 明天他将焦急地注视着女儿游过这段漫长的距离到达英国。[7] 黛比计划每两小时休息一下。[8] 她将喝些饮料，但不吃固体食物。[9] 黛比的大部分同学将在英国海岸等候她。[10] 他们当中还会有黛比的母亲,在她本人还是个小女孩的时候,也曾横渡过英吉利海峡！[11]

1. Debbie Hart is going to swim…

简单句，主谓结构.

[关键句型] 一般将来时，本句为一般将来时，be going to do 为一般将来时的构成形式.

2. She is going to set out…

简单句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 一般将来时，本句也用了 be going to do 的形式.

3. Debbie is eleven years old and she hopes to set up…

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主系表结构；后句为主谓宾结构，其中动词不定式短语作宾语，我们细分该短语：to set up a (new world) record.

4. She is a swimmer and many people feel that she is sure.

并列句，and 分成前后两句，前句为简单句，主系表结构；后句为复合句，主句主谓 ＋ that 引导的宾语从句结构，该从句为主系表结构.

5. Debbie's father will set out…

简单句，主谓结构，用了一般将来时.

6. Mr. Hart has trained his daughter.

简单句，主谓宾结构，has done 用了现在完成时.

7. he will be watching her as she swims the distance…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，as 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本句的主句为将来进行时，will be doing 形式.

8. Debbie intends to take short rests…

简单句，主谓宾结构，动词不定式短语作宾语.

9. She will have something but she will not eat any food.

并列句，but 连接的两句均为主谓宾结构，也都用了一般将来时，will do 结构.

10. Most will be waiting.

简单句，主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本句为将来进行时，will be doing 形式.

11. Among them will be Debbie's mother, who swam the Channel when she was a girl.

并列复合句，主句为倒装结构，表语提前了，正常语序为 Debbie's mother will be among them. 后面是 who 引导的定语从句，其实就是为了能够直接补充说明 mother，才用了倒装结构，这里是 who 引导的非限制性定语从句. 该定语从句本身还是一个复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，里面跟了一个 when 引导的时间状语从句，主系表结构.

Lesson 37 The Olympic Games 奥林匹克运动会

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

The Olympic Games will be held [in our country] [in four years' time].[1] [As a great many people will be visiting the country,] the government will be building (new) hotels, an (immense) stadium, and a (new Olympic-standard swimming) pool.[2] They will [also] be building (new) roads and a (special) railway line.[3] The Games will be held [just] [outside the capital] and the (whole) area will be called <'Olympic City'>.[4] Workers will have completed the (new) roads [by the end of this year].[5] [By the end of next year], they will have finished work (on the new stadium).[6] The (fantastic modern) buildings have been designed [by Kurt Gunter].[7] Everybody will be watching [anxiously] [as the new buildings go up.][8] We are {all} [very] excited and are looking forward to the Olympic Games [because they have [never] been held [before] [in this country].][9]

4 年以后,奥林匹克运动会将在我们国家举行。[1] 由于大批游客将来我们国家参观,政府准备建造一些新的饭店、一个大型体育场和一个全新的符合奥运会标准的游泳池。[2] 他们还将修筑一些新的道路和一条铁路专线。[3] 奥运会就在首都市郊举办,整个地区将被称作"奥运城"。[4] 工人们将在今年年底前把新路铺好;[5] 到明年年底,他们将把新体育场建成。[6] 这些巨大的现代化建筑是由库尔特·冈特设计的。[7] 大家都将热切地注视着新建筑拔地而起。[8] 我们都非常激动,盼望着奥运会的到来,因为在这个国家里还从未举办过奥运会。[9]

1. The Olympic Games will be held…

简单句,主谓结构. 本句为一般将来时的被动语态,其构成为 will be done.

2. As a great many people will be visiting the country, the government will be building…

复合句,主句主谓宾结构,用了将来进行时;句首是 as 引导的原因状语从句,主谓宾结构,也是将来进行时,其构成一般为 will be doing.

3. They will be building…

简单句,主谓宾结构,将来进行时.

4. The Games will be held and the area will be called.

并列句,and 连接前后两句,均为主谓结构,也均为一般将来时的被动语态.

5. Workers will have completed the roads.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本句为将来完成时，will have done 形式.

6. they will have finished work.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本句也是将来完成时.

7. The buildings have been designed…

简单句，主谓结构，用了现在完成时的被动语态，has/have been done 形式，通常一件作品在注明由谁进行设计时，需要用被动，designed by sb.

8. Everybody will be watching as the new buildings go up.

复合句，主句主谓结构，用了将来进行时；从句为 as 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构.

9. We are excited and are looking forward to the Olympic Games because they have been held.

并列复合句，主句为并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主系表结构，后句为省略了主语的主谓宾结构；后面跟了一个 because 引导的原因状语从句，该从句为主谓结构，用了现在完成时的被动语态.

本句词组 look forward to 后面如果接动词，需要接动名词 v-ing 形式，to 在这里作介词，并非动词不定式，例：<u>We're</u> [really] <u>looking forward to</u> **seeing** you [again]. 我们非常盼望能再见到你.[1]

---

[1] 选自牛津词典 look 词条 look forward to sth. 短语动词.

Lesson 38 Everything except the weather 唯独没有考虑到天气

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

My old friend, {Harrison}, had lived [in the Mediterranean] [for many years] [before he returned [to England].]¹ He had [often] dreamed of retiring [in England] and had planned to settle down [in the country].² He had [no sooner] returned than he bought a house and went [to live there].³ [Almost immediately] he began to complain about the weather, for [even though it was [still] summer,] it rained [continually] and it was [often] [bitterly] cold.⁴ [After so many years of sunshine], Harrison got a shock.⁵ He acted [as if he had [never] lived [in England] [before].]⁶ [In the end], it was more [than he could bear.]⁷ He had [hardly] had time [to settle down] [when he sold the house] and left the country.⁸ The dream (he had had [for so many years]) ended [there].⁹ Harrison had thought of everything [except the weather].¹⁰

我的老朋友哈里森在回到英国以前曾多年居住在地中海地区。¹ 过去他常幻想退休后到英国,并计划在乡间安顿下来。² 他刚一回到英国就买下了一幢房子住了进去。³ 但紧接着他就开始抱怨那里的天气了。⁴ 因为即使那时仍为夏季,但雨总是下个不停,而且常常冷得厉害。⁴ 在阳光下生活了那么多年的哈里森对此感到惊奇。⁵ 他的举动就好像他从未在英国生活过一样。⁶ 最后,他再也忍受不住了,⁷ 还没等安顿下来就卖掉了房子,离开了这个国家。⁸ 他多年来的幻想从此破灭。⁹ 哈里森考虑到了所有事情,唯独没有考虑到天气。¹⁰

1. My old friend had lived… before he returned.

复合句,主句主谓结构,后面是 before 引导的时间状语从句,主谓结构.

[关键句型] had lived 为过去完成时,往往表示两件过去的事情,哪一件发生在前,我们了解到老朋友住在地中海的事情发生在他回来以前,所以从句用了一般过去时,主句用了过去完成时.

2. He had dreamed of retiring and had planned to settle down.

并列句,and 连接前后两句,均为主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 均为 had done,过去完成时.

3. He had returned than he bought a house and went…

并列句,前句主句主谓结构,than 在这里是连词,表示就,回来以后就立刻买房

了，后面是主谓宾结构和省略了主语的主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本句中回来是比之前买房这件事还要先发生的事情，所以回来用了过去完成时，而买房只用了一般过去时.

4. he began to complain about the weather, for even though it was summer, it rained and it was cold.

并列复合句，for 在这里是连词，表由于、因为，通常用于书面语，所引导的句子对于前句作解释说明. for 的前句为主谓宾结构，动词不定式短语作宾语；for 后面的句子是复合句，even though 引导让步状语从句，主系表结构，后面的主句为并列句，由 and 连接，主谓结构和主系表结构.

5. Harrison got a shock.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

6. He acted as if he had lived…

复合句，主句主谓结构，as if 引导方式状语从句，主谓结构，过去完成时.

7. it was more than he could bear.

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是比较状语从句，主谓结构.

8. He had had time when he sold the house and left the country.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，是并列句，都是主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本句的主句为过去完成时 had done 形式，这里 had had time 的第一个 had 是助动词，第二个 had 则是 have 的过去分词.

9. The dream he had had ended.

复合句，主句主谓结构，中间是省略了 that 的定语从句(that) he had had. 过去完成时的构成跟上句一致.

10. Harrison had thought of everything.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

Lesson 39 Am I all right? 我是否痊愈？

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[While <u>John Gilbert</u> <u>was</u> <u>in hospital</u>,] <u>he</u> <u>asked</u> <u>his doctor</u> <to tell him whether <u>his operation</u> had been <u>successful</u>>, but <u>the doctor</u> <u>refused</u> <u>to do so</u>.[1] [The following day], <u>the patient</u> <u>asked for</u> <u>a (bedside) telephone</u>.[2] [When <u>he</u> <u>was</u> <u>alone</u>,] <u>he</u> <u>telephoned</u> <u>the hospital exchange</u> and <u>asked for</u> <u>Doctor Millington</u>.[3] [When <u>the doctor</u> <u>answered</u> <u>the phone</u>,] <u>Mr. Gilbert</u> <u>said</u> <u>he</u> <u>was inquiring</u> [about a certain patient], {<u>a Mr. John Gilbert</u>}.[4] <u>He</u> <u>asked</u> <u>if</u> <u>Mr. Gilbert's operation</u> <u>had been</u> <u>successful</u> and <u>the doctor</u> <u>told</u> <u>him</u> <u>that</u> <u>it</u> <u>had been</u>.[5] <u>He</u> [then] <u>asked</u> <u>when</u> <u>Mr. Gilbert</u> <u>would be allowed</u> <to go home> and <u>the doctor</u> <u>told</u> <u>him</u> <u>that</u> <u>he</u> <u>would have to stay</u> [in hospital] [for another two weeks].[6] [Then] <u>Dr. Millington</u> <u>asked</u> <u>the caller</u> <u>if</u> <u>he</u> <u>was</u> <u>a relative</u> (of the patient).[7] '<u>No</u>,' <u>the patient</u> <u>answered</u>, '<u>I</u> <u>am</u> <u>Mr. John Gilbert</u>.'[8]

当约翰·吉尔伯特住院的时候，他问医生他的手术是否成功，但医生拒绝告诉他。[1]第二天，这位病人要了一部床头电话。[2]当房里只剩他一个人时，他挂通了医院的话务台，要求转接米灵顿医生。[3]当这位医生接过电话时，吉尔伯特先生说他想询问一个病人的情况，是一位名叫约翰·吉尔伯特的先生。[4]他问吉尔伯特先生的手术是否成功，医生告诉他手术很成功。[5]然后他又问吉尔伯特先生什么时候可以回家，医生说他在医院还必须再住上两个星期。[6]之后，米灵顿医生问打电话的人是否是病人的亲属。[7]"不是，"病人回答说，"我就是约翰·吉尔伯特先生。"[8]

1. While John Gilbert was in hospital, he asked his doctor to tell… but the doctor refused to do so.

并列复合句，but 连接前后两句，前句为复合句，主句为主谓宾 + 宾补结构，句首是 while 引导的时间状语从句，主系表结构；but 后句为主谓宾结构.

其中宾补较长，我们可以额外细分 ~~to~~ tell him whether…是 tell 接的双宾语，其中直接宾语由 whether 引导的从句担任，我们在课文中予以了标记.

2. the patient asked for a telephone.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

3. When he was alone, he telephoned the hospital exchange and asked for Doctor Millington.

复合句，主句为并列句，均为主谓宾结构；句首是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主系表结构.

[关键句型] 本课复习直接引语和间接引语，本句的 he asked for 为间接引语.

4. When the doctor answered the phone, Mr. Gilbert said he was inquiring…

复合句，主句主谓 + 宾语从句结构，该宾语从句为主谓结构，省略了 that；句首是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] Mr. Gilbert said…为间接引语.

5. He asked if… and the doctor told him that…

并列复合句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓 + if 引导的宾语从句结构，该从句为主系表结构；后句为主谓宾 + that 引导的宾语从句结构，该从句为主谓结构.

[关键句型] he asked…以及 the doctor told him that…均为间接引语.

6. He asked when… and the doctor told him that…

并列复合句，and 连接前后两句，本句跟上一句非常像，前句为主谓 + when 引导的宾语从句结构，不是时间状语从句，这个需要留意，该宾语从句为主谓 + 主补结构. 后句跟上一句的后句完全一样.

7. Dr. Millington asked the caller if he was a relative.

复合句，主句主谓宾 + if 引导的宾语从句结构，从句为主系表结构.

8. the patient answered…

复合句，主谓 + 直接引语作宾语从句结构.

[关键句型] 引号里面的内容为直接引语.

Lesson 40 Food and talk　进餐与交谈

[1][Last week] [at a dinner party], the hostess asked me <to sit next to Mrs. Rumbold>.[1] Mrs. Rumbold was a (large, unsmiling) lady (in a tight black dress).[2] She did [not] [even] look up [when I took my seat [beside her].][3] Her eyes were fixed [on her plate] and [in a short time], she was busy [eating].[4] I tried to make conversation.[5]

[2]"A new play is coming [to 'The Globe'] [soon]," I said.[6] "Will you be seeing it?"[7]

[3]"No," she answered.[8]

[4]"Will you be spending your holidays [abroad] [this year]?" I asked.[9]

[5]"No," she answered.[10]

[6]"Will you be staying [in England]?" I asked.[11]

[7]"No," she answered.[12]

[8][In despair], I asked her whether she was enjoying her dinner.[13]

[9]"^Young man^," she answered, "[if you ate [more] and talked [less],] we would {both} enjoy our dinner!"[14]

[1]在上星期的一次宴会上，女主人安排我坐在兰伯尔德夫人的身旁。[1] 兰伯尔德夫人是一位身材高大、表情严肃的女人，穿一件紧身的黑衣服。[2]当我在她身旁坐下来的时候，她甚至连头都没有抬一下。[3]她的眼睛盯着自己的盘子，不一会儿就忙着吃起来了。[4]我试图和她聊聊。[5]

[2]"一出新剧要来'环球剧场'上演了，"我说，[6]"您去看吗？"[7]

[3]"不，"她回答。[8]

[4]"您今年去国外度假吗？"我又问。[9]

[5]"不，"她回答。[10]

[6]"您就呆在英国吗？"我问。[11]

[7]"不，"她回答。[12]

[8]失望之中我问她饭是否吃得满意。[13]

[9]"年轻人，"她回答说，"如果你多吃点，少说点，我们两个都会吃得好的！"[14]

1. the hostess asked me to sit…

　　简单句，主谓宾 ＋ 宾补结构.

2. Mrs. Rumbold was a lady…

　　简单句，主系表结构.

3. She did not look up when I took my seat…

复合句，主句主谓结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

4. Her eyes were fixed and…, she was busy.

并列句，这里是 and 分开了前后两句，而不是句中的逗号，这个逗号是 and 后句之中的，需要留意，否则就变成以一个逗号连接两个句子了. and 前句为主谓结构；and 后句为主系表结构，she was busy in doing sth. 这里 busy 为形容词作表语，后面是省略了介词 in 的 doing 作状语.

5. I tried to make…

简单句，主谓宾结构，动词不定式短语作宾语.

6. A new play is coming.

简单句，主谓结构.

7. Will you be seeing it?

一般疑问句，主谓宾结构. 正常语序为 you will be seeing it. 使用了将来进行时，后面两个问句也是如此.

9. Will you be spending your holidays?

一般疑问句，主谓宾结构.

11. Will you be staying?

一般疑问句，主谓宾结构.

13. I asked her whether…

复合句，主句主谓宾 + whether 引导的宾语从句，从句为主谓宾结构.

14. if you ate and talked, we would enjoy our dinner!

复合句，主句主谓宾，if 引导的条件状语从句为主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本句为虚拟语气，对于刚接触这个概念的同学，暂时不用深究，可以把该句背下来，继续培养语感，本书后面还会遇到. 对于已有一定语感的同学，可以翻阅语法书，在虚拟语气一章中系统地学习和了解. 本处为与现在情况相反的假设，具体参阅下表对比.

假设的类型	If 引导的从句形式	主句形式
与将来相反	did 或 were were to do should do	would/could/might/should + do
与现在相反	did 或 were	would/could/might/should + do
与过去相反	had done	would/could/might/should + had done

Lesson 41 Do you call that a hat? 你把那个叫帽子吗？

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[1]'<u>Do</u> <u>you</u> <u>call</u> <u>that</u> <a hat>?' <u>I</u> <u>said</u> [to my wife].[1]

[2]'<u>You</u> <u>needn't be</u> [so] <u>rude</u> [about it],' <u>my wife</u> <u>answered</u> [as <u>she</u> <u>looked at</u> <u>herself</u> [in the mirror].][2]

[3]<u>I</u> <u>sat down</u> [on one of those modern chairs] (with holes in it) and <u>waited</u>.[3] <u>We</u> <u>had been</u> <u>in the hat shop</u> [for half an hour] and <u>my wife</u> <u>was</u> [still] <u>in front of the mirror</u>.[4]

[4]'<u>We</u> <u>mustn't buy</u> <u>things</u> (<u>we</u> <u>don't need</u>,)' <u>I</u> <u>remarked</u> [suddenly].[5] <u>I</u> <u>regretted</u> <u>saying it</u> [almost at once].[6]

[5]'<u>You</u> <u>needn't have said</u> <u>that</u>,' <u>my wife</u> <u>answered</u>.[7] '<u>I</u> <u>needn't remind</u> <u>you</u> [of that terrible tie] (<u>you</u> <u>bought</u> [yesterday].)'[8]

[6]'<u>I</u> <u>find</u> <u>it</u> <beautiful>,' <u>I</u> <u>said</u>.[9] '<u>A man</u> <u>can</u> [never] <u>have</u> (too many) <u>ties</u>.'[10]

[7]'And <u>a woman</u> <u>can't have</u> (too many) <u>hats</u>,' <u>she</u> <u>answered</u>.[11]

[8] [Ten minutes later] <u>we</u> <u>walked</u> [out of the shop] [together].[12] <u>My wife</u> <u>was</u> <u>wearing a hat</u> (<u>that</u> <u>looked like a lighthouse</u>!)[13]

[1]"你把那个叫帽子吗？"我对妻子说。[1]

[2]"你说话没必要这样不客气，"我的妻子边回答边照着镜子。[2]

[3]我坐在一个新式的满是网眼儿的椅子上，等待着。[3]我们在这家帽子店已经呆了半个小时了，而我的妻子仍在镜子面前挑选。[4]

[4]"我们不应该买我们不需要的东西，"我突然发表意见说，[5]但马上又后悔说了这话。[6]

[5]"你没必要这么说，"我妻子回答说，[7]"我也不必提醒你昨天买的那条糟糕透了的领带。"[8]

[6]"我觉得它好看，"我说，[9]"男人有多少条领带也不会嫌多。"[10]

[7]"那女人有多少顶帽子也不嫌多。"她回答。[11]

[8]10 分钟以后，我们一道走出了商店。[12]我妻子戴着的帽子像灯塔一样。[13]

1. Do you call that a hat?

简单句，主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

2. You needn't be rude as she looked at herself.

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是 as 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本课复习 must, have to 和 need 的用法，本句使用了 need 的否定形式.

3. I sat down and waited.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓结构；后句为省略了主语的主谓结构.

4. We had been in the hat shop and my wife was in front of the mirror.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前后均为主系表结构.

5. We mustn't buy things we don't need…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面跟了一个省略了 that 的定语从句，为主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本句用到了 must 和 need，在这里不可以互换，注意体会其意思.

6. I regretted saying it.

简单句，主谓宾结构，动名词短语作宾语，这个宾语本身是有逻辑上的动宾关系的，<u>say it</u>.

7. You needn't have said that.

简单句，主谓宾结构，用了 need 的否定形式.

8. I needn't remind you… (that) you bought…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面有一个省略了引导词 that 的定语从句，主谓结构.

remind sb. of sth. 提醒某人某事，这里的介词短语可以理解为补充性的状语，能看懂即可，不用深究. 类似的表达还有 tell sb. of sth. || inform sb. of sth. || warn sb. of sth. || accuse sb. of (doing) sth. || clear sb. of sth. || cheat sb. of sth.

remind 在课文中是动词，其名词的用法为 reminder，我们可以把教材的句子改一下：<u>That terrible tie is a reminder</u> (of the things) (<u>we don't need</u>.) 那条糟糕透了的领带就是我们不要买不必要的东西的提醒.

9. I find it beautiful.

简单句，主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

13. My wife was wearing a hat that looked like a lighthouse!

复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，后面跟了一个 that 引导的定语从句修饰 a hat，引导词 that 在句中作主语，主谓宾结构. beacon 也有灯塔的意思.

Lesson 42 Not very musical 并非很懂音乐

成长足迹：20＿＿年＿＿月＿＿日

[As we had had a (long) walk (through one of the markets) (of Old Delhi),] we stopped [at a square] [to have a rest].[1] [After a time], we noticed a snake charmer (with two large baskets) [at the other side of the square], so we went [to have a look at him].[2] [As soon as he saw us,] he picked up a (long) pipe (which was covered [with coins]) and opened one of the baskets.[3] [When he began to play a tune,] we had our first glimpse (of the snake).[4] It rose [out of the basket] and began to follow the movements (of the pipe).[5] We were [very much] surprised [when the snake charmer [suddenly] began to play jazz and modern pop songs.][6] The snake, [however], continued to 'dance' [slowly].[7] It [obviously] could [not] tell the difference (between Indian music and jazz)![8]

当我们穿过旧德里的市场时走了很长一段路,我们在一个广场上停下来休息。[1] 过了一会儿,我们注意到广场的那一边有一个带着两个大筐的耍蛇人，于是就走过去看看。[2] 他一见我们，就拿起了一个长长的上面镶有硬币的管乐器，并掀开了一个筐的盖子。[3] 当他开始吹奏一支曲子时,我们才第一次看到那条蛇。[4] 它从筐里探出身子,随着乐器的摆动而扭动。[5] 当耍蛇人突然又吹奏起爵士乐和现代流行乐曲时,我们感到非常惊奇。[6] 然而那蛇却还是缓慢地"舞动"着。[7] 显然,它分辨不出印度音乐和爵士乐！[8]

1. As we had had a walk, we stopped.

　　复合句，主句主谓结构，句首是 as 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构. 新德里是印度的首都，New Delhi. 不是旧德里，也不是孟买 Bombay. 有时间应该积累一些主要国家的城市名，在日常生活中你有印象的，都可以时不时查一查. 我 2019 年在新德里倒是没看到耍蛇人，不过在孟买看到了，但也没凑过去，怕问我要钱.

　　[关键句型] have 的用法，其中 have + 名词可以代替动词，比如 have a walk.

2. we noticed a snake charmer, so we went…

　　并列句，so 作连词，前句主谓宾结构；后句主谓结构.

3. As soon as he saw us, he picked up a pipe which was covered and opened one…

　　复合句，主句是并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句主谓宾结构，含有一个 which 引

导的定语从句修饰 pipe，该定语从句为主谓结构；后句为省略了主语的主谓宾结构. 句首是 as soon as 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

4. When he began to play, we had our first glimpse.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，句首是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

5. It rose and began to follow…

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句主谓结构；后句为省略了主语的主谓宾结构.

6. We were surprised when the snake charmer began to play…

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面跟了一个 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

7. The snake continued to 'dance'…

简单句，主谓宾结构，不定式作宾语.

8. It could tell the difference…

简单句，主谓宾结构. 因为蛇只是在跟着耍蛇人的 pipe 扭动，跟所演奏的音乐品类无关.

Indian 在这里是印度的，印度人的意思，但这个词如果你查字典，还有印第安人的意思，原因就在于当初哥伦布等欧洲人发现美洲新大陆的时候认为所到之处为印度，所以叫北美原住民为 Indians，以讹传讹，所以中文在翻译时面对同一个单词，有印度人和印第安人两种不同的译法.

Lesson 43 Over the South Pole 飞越南极

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[In 1929], [three years after his flight (over the North Pole)], <u>the American explorer</u>, {R. E. Byrd}, [successfully] <u>flew</u> [over the South Pole] [for the first time].¹ [Though, [at first], <u>Byrd and his men</u> <u>were able to take</u> <u>a great many photographs</u> (of the mountains) (<u>that</u> <u>lay</u> [below],)] <u>they</u> [soon] <u>ran into</u> [serious] <u>trouble</u>.² [At one point], <u>it</u> <u>seemed</u> <u>certain</u> that <u>their plane</u> <u>would crash</u>.³ <u>It</u> could [only] <u>get over</u> <u>the mountains</u> [if <u>it</u> <u>rose</u> [to 10,000 feet.]⁴ <u>Byrd</u> [at once] <u>ordered</u> <u>his men</u> <to throw out two heavy food sacks>.⁵ <u>The plane</u> <u>was</u> [then] <u>able to rise</u> and <u>it</u> <u>cleared</u> <u>the mountains</u> [by 400 feet].⁶ <u>Byrd</u> [now] <u>knew</u> that <u>he</u> <u>would be able to reach</u> <u>the South Pole</u> (<u>which</u> <u>was</u> <u>300 miles away,</u>) for <u>there</u> <u>were</u> <u>no more mountains</u> (in sight).⁷ <u>The aircraft</u> <u>was</u> <u>able to fly</u> [over the (endless white) plains] [without difficulty].⁸

美国探险家 R. E. 伯德在飞越北极 3 年之后，于 1929 年第一次飞越了南极。¹ 虽然开始时伯德和他的助手们拍下了飞机下面连绵群山的大量照片，但他们很快就陷入了困境。² 在有个地方，飞机似乎肯定要坠毁了。³ 只有在飞至 10,000 英尺的高度时，它才能飞过这些山头。⁴ 伯德马上命令他的助手们把两个沉重的食物袋扔掉，⁵ 于是飞机可以上升了，它在离山头 400 英尺的高度飞越了过去。⁶ 伯德这时知道他能够顺利飞抵 300 英里以外的南极了，因为前面再没有高山了。⁷ 飞机可以毫无困难地飞过这片茫茫无际的白色原野！⁸

1. the American explorer, flew…

简单句，主谓结构. 本句修饰成分较多，在一开始的时间状语中，over the North Pole 作定语修饰 flight，这里额外标记了定语符号，并非从句. Byrd 的发音跟 bird 一致.

2. Though, Byrd and his men were able to take a great many photographs they ran into trouble.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，句首是 though 引导的让步状语从句，主谓宾结构，该状语从句中，含有一个 that 引导的宾语从句，主谓结构，修饰 mountains.

[关键句型] 复习 be able to 的表达.

3. it seemed certain that their plane would crash.

复合句，it 是形式主语，真正的主语是 that 引导的从句，主谓结构.

4. It could get over the mountains if it rose.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，动词词组 get over 作谓语，从句是 if 引导的条件状语从句，主谓结构.

5. Byrd ordered his men to throw…

简单句，主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

6. The plane was able to rise and it cleared the mountains.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓结构；后句为主谓宾结构.

7. Byrd knew that he would be able to reach the South Pole which…for…

并列复合句，for 作并列连词，连接前后两句，前句为复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，后面是 which 引导的定语从句修饰 the South Pole，主系表结构；后句是 there be 句型.

8. The aircraft was able to fly…

简单句，主谓结构. 状语里面 endless white 修饰原野 plains，这里额外标记了出来.

Lesson 44 Through the forest 穿过森林

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Mrs. Anne Sterling did not think of the risk (she was taking) [when she ran [through a forest] after two men.]¹ They had rushed [up to her] [while she was having a picnic [at the edge] (of a forest) [with her children]] and tried to steal her handbag.² [In the struggle], the strap broke and, [with the bag in their possession], both men started running [through the trees].³ Mrs. Sterling got [so] angry [that she ran after them.]⁴ She was [soon] out of breath, but she continued to run.⁵ [When she caught up with them,] she saw that they had sat down and were going through the contents (of the bag), so she ran [straight at them].⁶ The men got (such) a fright [that they dropped the bag and ran away.]⁷ 'The strap needs mending,' said Mrs. Sterling [later], 'but they did not steal anything.'⁸

安·斯特林夫人在穿过森林追赶两个男人时，她并没有考虑到所冒的风险。¹ 刚才，当她和孩子们在森林的边缘野餐的时候，这两个人冲到她跟前，企图偷走她的手提包。² 在争抢中，手提包的带子断了，包落入这两个人手里，他们拔腿跑进了树林里。³ 斯特林夫人非常气愤，向着他们追了过去。⁴ 只追了一会儿便上气不接下气了，但她还是继续追赶。⁵ 当她赶上他们时，发现他们已经坐了下来，正翻着包里的东西。⁶ 于是她直冲过去。这两个人吓了一跳，扔下提包逃跑了。⁷ "包的带子需要修理，"斯特林夫人事后说道，"不过他们什么也没偷走。"⁸

1. Mrs. Anne Sterling did think of the risk she was taking when she ran after two men.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面是一个省略了引导词 that 的定语从句，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构，run after 动词词组作谓语，本身 after 也有动词的义项.

2. They had rushed and tried to steal her handbag.

复合句，主句是 and 连接的并列句，前句为主谓结构，里面有 while she was having a picnic 作时间状语从句；and 后句则省略了主语，继续描述窃贼（they）想偷东西.

本句的 steal 是偷窃的意思，需要与 rob 进行区别，教材中在下一课（第 45 课）的 Special difficulties 做了讲解，见教材 P204.

3. the strap broke and both men started running…

并列句，and 连接两句，前句主谓结构，后句主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本课复习动名词，本句的 running 即该表达.

4. Mrs. Sterling got angry that she ran after them.

复合句，主句主系表结构，从句是 so…that 句型，that 引导结果状语从句，主谓宾结构.

[学习提示] 这里不是面对小偷的正确处理方式建议，本文仅为故事的表达，如在生活中遇到类似问题，一定要优先确保自身安全. 切记，不要追小偷，而应该拨打 110 报警.

5. She was out of breath, but she continued to run.

并列句，but 连接前后两句，前句主系表结构，后句主谓宾结构.

6. When… she saw that they had sat down and were going through the contents so she ran.

并列复合句，so 连接前后两句，so 前面为复合句，主句为主谓 + 宾语从句结构，该宾语从句由 that 引导，为并列句，用 and 连接，该从句的前句为主谓结构，后句为省略了主语的主谓宾结构. 句首是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

so 后句为简单句，主谓结构.

7. The men got such a fright that they dropped the bag and ran away.

复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，such…that 句型，后面是 that 引导的结果状语从句，该从句为并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构，后句为省略了主语的主谓结构.

8. The strap needs mending, but they did not steal anything.

并列句，but 连接前后两句，均为主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本句的 mend 用了动名词 mending 作宾语.

Lesson 45 A clear conscience 问心无愧

成长足迹：20＿＿年＿＿月＿＿日

The whole village [soon] learnt that a large sum of money had been lost.¹ Sam Benton, {the local butcher}, had lost his wallet [while taking his savings to the post office].² Sam was sure that the wallet must have been found [by one of the villagers], but it was not returned [to him].³ Three months passed, and [then] [one morning], Sam found his wallet [outside his front door].⁴ It had been wrapped up [in newspaper] and it contained half the money (he had lost,) [together with a note] (which said: 'A thief, ^yes^, but (only 50 per cent) a thief!')⁵ [Two months later], some more money was sent [to Sam] [with another note]: 'Only 25 per cent a thief [now]!'⁶ [In time], all Sam's money was paid back [in this way].⁷ The last note said: 'I am 100 per cent honest [now]!'⁸

整个村子很快知道，有一大笔钱丢了。¹当地的屠夫萨姆·本顿在把存款送往邮局的途中把钱包丢了。²萨姆确信那钱包一定是被某个村民捡到了，可是却不见有人来送还给他。³3个月过去了，后来在一天早晨，萨姆在自己的大门外发现了他的钱包。⁴钱包是用报纸包着的，里面有一半他丢失的钱，而且还附着一张纸条，上面写着："一个小偷，是的，但只是一个50%的小偷！"⁵又过了两个月，又有一些钱送还给了萨姆，又附了一张字条："这回只是25%的小偷了！"⁶很快，萨姆全部的钱都用同样的方式还了回来。⁷最后的那张字条上写道："我现在是100%的诚实了！"⁸

1. The village learnt that money had been lost.

复合句，主句主谓 + 宾语从句结构，that 引导的宾语从句为主谓结构.

句中 lost 是 lose 的过去分词，是动词，被弄丢了. lost 这个词本身还是形容词，如果是 The money was lost. 则是主系表结构，钱不见了.

[关键句型] 本课复习被动语态，had been lost 为过去完成时的被动语态表达，had been done 形式.

2. Sam Benton had lost his wallet.

简单句，主谓宾结构，后面有一个 while 引导的时间状语，并非从句.

3. Sam was sure that the wallet must have been found but it was not returned.

并列复合句，全句由 but 连接，前句为复合句，主句为主系表结构，后面是 that 引

导的宾语从句，该从句为主谓结构，must have been 表推测，且是过去的事情，用了现在完成时，that 引导的宾语从句也是主谓宾结构；but 后句则是主谓结构.

[关键句型] have been found 为现在完成时的被动语态表达.

4. Three months passed, and Sam found his wallet.

并列句，and 连接前后两个句子，前句为主谓结构，后句为主谓宾结构.

5. It had been wrapped up and it contained half the money he had lost which said…

并列复合句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓结构. and 后句是复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，省略了引导词 that 的定语从句修饰 the money，最后则是 which 引导的定语从句来补充说明 a note 的内容，关于该纸条的内容，这里可以参考本课最后一句，I am + 表语，这里 a thief 就是 I am a thief 的省略表达，所以我们划分成表语.

[关键句型] had been wrapped 为过去完成时的被动语态表达.

6. some more money was sent…

简单句，主谓结构.

[关键句型] was sent 为一般过去时的被动语态表达.

7. all Sam's money was paid back.

简单句，主谓结构，句首的 in time 一般多作"及时"来用，在这里是 eventually，终于的意思.

[关键句型] was paid 为一般过去时的被动语态表达.

8. I am 100 per cent honest.

简单句，主系表结构，honest 在句中是形容词，该词的冠词用 an，如 an honest person 一个诚实的人.

我读小学的时候也遇到过类似的事情，我买了部四驱车，上午带去学校，放在书桌的抽屉里，一个课间之后就不见了. 小伙伴都帮我找，就是找不到，正当我已经放弃了之后，下午回学校，我发现四驱车又回到了我的抽屉里，不过电池被偷走我四驱车的人给用光了.

Lesson 46 Expensive and uncomfortable 既昂贵又受罪

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[When a plane (from London) arrived [at Sydney airport],] workers began to unload a number of wooden boxes (which contained clothing.)¹ No one could account for the fact {that one of the boxes was [extremely] heavy.}² It [suddenly] occurred [to one of the workers] to open up the box.³ He was astonished [at what he found].⁴ A man was lying [in the box] [on top of a pile] (of woolen goods).⁵ He was [so] surprised [at being discovered] [that he did [not] [even] try to run away.]⁶ [After he was arrested,] the man admitted hiding in the box [before the plane left London.]⁷ He had had a (long and uncomfortable) trip, for he had been confined [to the wooden box] [for over eighteen hours].⁸ The man was ordered <to pay £3,500> [for the cost] (of the trip).⁹ The (normal) price (of a ticket) is £2,000!¹⁰

当一架来自伦敦的飞机抵达悉尼机场时，工人们开始卸下装有服装的一批木箱。¹其中有只箱子特别重，可谁也弄不清是怎么回事。²突然一个工人想到打开箱子看看。³看到的情景使吃惊，⁴箱内有一个人正躺在一堆毛织品之上。⁵他由于被人发现而感到非常吃惊，甚至都没有企图逃跑。⁶此人被逮捕后，承认他是在飞机离开伦敦前躲进箱子里的。⁷他经历了一次漫长而又难受的旅程，因为他在那木箱里闷了18个多小时。⁸此人被责令交付旅费3,500英镑，⁹而正常票价是2,000英镑！¹⁰

1. **When a plane arrived, workers began to unload a number of wooden boxes which contained clothing.**

   复合句，主句主谓宾结构，动词不定式作宾语，句首是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构；最后是 which 引导的定语从句，主谓宾结构.

   本课的标题翻译非常棒，意思正确，还押韵了.

   [关键句型] 本课复习后面跟介词 to, at, for 和 with 的动词的使用，本句为 arrived at.

2. **No one could account for the fact that one of the boxes was heavy.**

   复合句，主句主谓宾结构，that 引导的同位语从句，主系表结构，同位语从句的引导词 that 不可省略，且不充当成分.

[关键句型] 本句为 account for 需要留意.

3. It occurred to open up the box.

简单句，it 形式主语，后面 to open 动词不定式短语作真正的主语，主谓结构.

4. He was astonished.

简单句，主系表结构，后面是介词短语作状语，不过这个介词短语里面有一个 what 引导的宾语从句作介词 at 的宾语，我们在状语这个成分中作额外的细分，该宾语从句为主谓结构.

5. A man was lying…

简单句，主谓结构.

6. He was so surprised… that he did try to run away.

复合句，主句主系表结构，so…that 结构，后面是 that 引导的结果状语从句，主谓宾结构. 句中 at being discovered 本身是介词短语作状语，不过在这个成分之中，being discovered 又作介词 at 的宾语，这里是被动语态，被发现要用 being.

7. After he was arrested, the man admitted hiding in the box before…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，句首是 after 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构；后面是 before 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

8. He had had a trip, for he had been confined…

并列句，for 为并列连词，前句为主谓宾结构；后句为主谓结构. confine sb. / sth. **to** sth. 这里的 to 是介词，后面跟名词性词语，意思是 to keep sb. / sth. inside the limits of a particular activity, subject, area, etc. 限制；限定.

9. The man was ordered to pay.

简单句，主谓 + 主语补语，这里使用了被动语态，如果转为主动语态，则主语补语将转成宾补，主动语态是 <u>order</u> <u>the man</u> <to pay>.

10. The price is £2,000!

简单句，主系表结构.

Lesson 47 A thirsty ghost　嗜酒的鬼魂

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

A public house (which was [recently] bought [by Mr. Ian Thompson]) is up for sale.[1] Mr. Thompson is going to sell it [because it is haunted.][2] He told me that he could not go to sleep [one night] [because he heard a (strange) noise <coming from the bar>.][3] [The next morning], he found that the doors had been blocked [by chairs] and the furniture had been moved.[4] [Though Mr. Thompson had turned the lights off [before he went [to bed],]] they were on [in the morning].[5] He [also] said that he had found five empty whisky bottles (which the ghost must have drunk [the night before].)[6] [When I suggested that some villagers must have come in [for a free drink],] Mr. Thompson shook his head.[7] The villagers have told him that they will not accept the pub [even if he gives it away.][8]

伊恩·汤普森先生最近才买的一个小酒店现在又要转让出去。[1] 汤普森先生之所以想脱手,是因为那里常闹鬼。[2] 他告诉我有天夜里他怎么也睡不着,因为他听到酒水吧里传来一阵奇怪的响声。[3] 第二天早上,他发现酒水吧的门被椅子堵上了,家具也被挪动过。[4] 虽然汤普森临睡觉时把灯关了,但早晨灯却都亮着。[5] 他还说他发现了 5 只空的威士忌瓶子,肯定是鬼魂昨天晚上喝的。[6] 当我暗示说一定是村里有些人来喝酒不付钱时,汤普森先生摇了摇头。[7] 村里的人已经告诉他,即使他把小酒店白送人,他们也不要。[8]

1. A public house which… is up for sale.

　　复合句，主句主系表结构，其中表语 up for sale 是固定搭配，就是挂牌放售的意思，可以与 put 连用，put the public house up for sale. 其中有一个 which 引导的定语从句修饰该 house，为主谓结构.

　　Ian 发音为/ˈiːən/，对于不常见的人名的读音，即便是英语母语人士也不能确保读对，往往是会试探性地读出来，然后跟对方确认，就像我们遇到别人姓名中有生僻字，直接让对方告诉我们怎么读即可.

2. Mr. Thompson is going to sell it because it is haunted.

　　复合句，主句主谓宾结构，be going to do 动词词组作谓语，后面是 because 引导的原因状语从句，为主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本课为复习课，本句复习第 36 课 be going to do 的表达.

3. He told me that he could not go to sleep because he heard a noise coming from the bar.

复合句，主句主谓宾 + 宾语从句结构，that 引导的宾语从句是主谓结构，该宾语从句中含有一个 because 引导的原因状语从句，为主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

[关键句型] 本句复习第 39 课，间接引语，he told me that…

4. he found that the doors had been blocked and the furniture had been moved.

复合句，主句主谓 + 宾语从句结构，该宾语从句为 and 连接的并列句，均为主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本句复习第 45 课被动语态，had been moved.

5. Though Mr. Thompson had turned the lights off before he went…, they were on.

复合句，我们从 though 引导的让步状语从句看起，该从句为主谓结构，其中谓语是由动词短语 turn off 一起构成的，不过宾语放在了该动词短语之间，所以我们在副词 off 处标记为谓语. 该让步状语从句中又含有一个 before 引导的时间状语从句，为主谓结构.

主句是 they were on，主系表结构，主语 they 指 lights，这里的 on 实际意义上是对应从句中 turned off 的 turned on 的简写，一起作谓语，但在本句中是副词作表语，[When something {such as a machine or an electric light} is **on**.] it is functioning or in use.[1]

[关键句型] 复习第 38 课过去完成时，本句 had turned.

6. He said that he had found five empty whisky bottles which…

复合句，主句主谓 + 宾语从句结构，宾语从句为主谓宾结构，后面有一个 which 引导的定语从句，为主谓结构.

[关键句型] 复习第 38 课过去完成时，本句 had found.

7. When I suggested that…, Mr. Thompson shook his head.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，句首是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓 + 宾语从句结构，该宾语从句为主谓结构.

[关键句型] 复习第 41 课过去完成时，must, have to 和 need 的用法.

8. The villagers have told him that they will not accept the pub even if he gives it away.

复合句，主句主谓宾 + that 引导的宾语从句结构，宾语从句为主谓宾结构，该从句中又包含一个 even if 引导的让步状语从句，为主谓宾结构，其中 give away 为动词词组作谓语.

[关键句型] 复习第 40 课，虚拟语气.

---

[1] 选自柯林斯英汉双解大词典 on 词条.

Lesson 48 Did you want to tell me something? 你想对我说什么吗？

<div align="right">成长足迹：20__年__月__日</div>

Dentists [always] ask questions [when it is impossible for you to answer.]¹ My dentist had [just] pulled out one of my teeth and had told me <to rest> [for a while].² I tried to say something, but my mouth was full of cotton wool.³ He knew I collected match boxes and asked me whether my collection was growing.⁴ He [then] asked me how my brother was and whether I liked my new job (in London).⁵ [In answer to these questions] I either nodded or made (strange) noises.⁶ [Meanwhile], my tongue was busy [searching out the hole] ([where] the tooth had been.)⁷ I [suddenly] felt [very] worried, but could not say anything.⁸ [When the dentist [at last] removed the cotton wool [from my mouth,]] I was able to tell him that he had pulled out the (wrong) tooth.⁹

牙科医生们总是在你无法做出回答的时候向你提出问题。¹我的牙医刚刚给我拔掉了一颗牙，叫我休息一会儿。²我想说点什么，但我嘴里塞满了药棉。³他知道我收集火柴盒，于是问我收藏的火柴盒是否在增加。⁴接着他又问我的兄弟近来如何，问我是否喜欢伦敦的新工作。⁵作为对这些问题的回答，我不是点头，就是发出奇怪的声音。⁶与此同时，我的舌头正在忙着寻找刚拔掉的那颗牙的伤口。⁷我突然非常着急起来，但却什么也说不出来。⁸当那位牙医后将药棉从我嘴中取出时，我总算得以告诉他，他拔错了牙。⁹

0. 标题

Did you want to tell me something? 一般疑问句，动词不定式短语作宾语，这里宾语之中可以额外予以分析，tell sb. sth. 双宾语结构.

1. Dentists ask questions when it is impossible for you to answer.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，it 是形式主语，后面介词短语作真正的主语.

2. My dentist had pulled out one of my teeth and had told me to rest.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构，动词短语作谓语；后句为主谓宾 + 宾补结构. one of 后面的名词一定要用复数形式，这里的 teeth 就是 tooth 的复数形式.

3. I tried to say something, but my mouth was full of cotton wool.

并列句，but 连接前后两句，前句主谓宾结构，动词不定式作宾语；后句主系表结

构.

4. He knew that… and asked me whether…

　　并列复合句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓 + 宾语从句结构，该从句省略了引导词 that，为主谓宾结构；后句为省略了主语的主谓宾 + 宾语从句结构，whether 引导直接宾语，主谓结构.

5. He asked me how…and whether…

　　复合句，主句为主谓宾 + 宾语从句结构. 其中宾语从句有两句，由 and 连接，句子结构上是并列的，一个由 how 引导，一个由 whether 引导.

6. I either nodded or made noises.

　　并列句，either 和 or 均为连词，不作具体的成分，本句是两个句子并列的，一个是 I nodded. 主谓结构；另一个是 I made noises. 主谓宾结构.

7. my tongue was busy… where the tooth had been.

　　复合句，主句为主系表结构，be busy (in) doing sth. 可参看第 40 课第 1 段第 4 句. 后面是 where 引导的定语从句，这里不是地点状语从句，主谓结构.

8. I felt worried, but could not say anything.

　　并列句，but 连接前后两句，前句为主系表结构；后句为主谓宾结构.

9. When the dentist removed the cotton wool, I was able to tell him that…

　　复合句，主句为主谓宾 + 宾语从句结构，该宾语从句为主谓宾结构. 句首是 when 引导的时间状语从句，为主谓宾结构.

单元复习

　　本课为复习课，教材 P215 的 SD 难点栏目提供了复习例句，斜体为正确词汇.

1. The new school, (*which* has [just] been completed,) is a (fine) building. 刚刚竣工的新学校，建筑精良.

2. He *denied* that he had taken it. 他否认拿了它.

3. The waiter *fetched* me a clean glass. 服务员给我拿来了一个干净的玻璃杯.

4. He is [*too*] ill [to do any work]. 他病重了，无法做任何工作.

5. I had a few *jobs* (to do) [in town] [this morning]. 今天早上我在镇上有几项工作要做.

6. *One* day I spoke [to *a* man] (*who* had won the Nobel prize.) 有一天，我和一位

诺贝尔奖得主谈话.

7. <u>A bird</u> <u>flew</u> [*past* my window]. 一只鸟飞过了我的窗前.

8. <u>We</u> <u>spent</u> <u>the first day</u> (of our holidays) [in Geneva]. [The *next* day] <u>we</u> <u>went</u> [to Basle]. 我们在日内瓦度过了假期的第一天. 第二天我们去了巴塞尔.

9. <u>I</u> <u>spent</u> <u>the afternoon</u> <*watching* the match>. 我花了一下午的时间看比赛.

10. <u>Ships</u> [*continually*] <u>cross</u> <u>the sea</u>. 船只不断地穿过大海.

11. "<u>Did</u> <u>you</u> <u>take</u> <u>that book</u> [from the shelf]?" <u>he</u> <u>*remarked*</u> [suddenly]. 他突然说："你从书架上拿了那本书吗？"

12. <u>The bank</u> <u>has been *robbed*</u>. 银行被抢了.

Unit 2 Special Lesson 第 2 单元特别课文
What's the time? 到底几点了？

成长足迹：20＿＿年＿＿月＿＿日

[学习提示] 本文介绍了一种特别的收藏. 先讲了这个人藏品的摆放情况，再通过其妻子的抱怨来表达这背后的问题所在，包括需要花大量精力除尘，需要忍受噪音，更让人哭笑不得的是，不知道哪个时钟是准的. 有这样一句话，戴两块手表反而不知道时间. 这启发我们，目标多了，反而不容易专心.

People [often] collect things.¹ Stamps, books and records are [fairly] common.² But the (strangest) collection (I have [ever] seen) belongs to a man (who has 1,500 clocks.)³ There are clocks (in every room of his house).⁴ The living room is lined [with shelves] (which have been filled [with clocks].)⁵ [As there is [not] enough room (for so many clocks),] the man has filled several trucks and stored them [in the garage].⁶ His wife complains [every day] about the work (she has to do,) for it is [not] easy to dust several hundred clocks.⁷ She [also] complains about the noise.⁸ Each clock keeps (its own) time, so chimes can be heard [almost] [any time] [during the day and night].⁹ [In her opinion], [however], there is something [even worse] [than dust and noise].¹⁰ [Even with so many clocks around], she [never] knows what time it is!¹¹ [1]

人们经常收藏东西。¹邮票、书籍和唱片都相当常见。²但我所见过的最奇怪的收藏，要属一位拥有 1,500 个时钟的人了。³他家的每个房间都有时钟。⁴客厅里排列了很多架子，上面摆满了时钟。⁵由于没有足够的地方摆放这么多的时钟，这个人让人把时钟装满了几辆卡车，然后存放在车库里。⁶他的妻子每天都在抱怨她必须要做的事情，因为给几百个时钟除尘并非易事。⁷她还抱怨时钟的噪音。⁸每个时钟都走着自己的时间，所以几乎在白天和晚上的任何时候都能听到钟响。⁹然而，在她看来，还有比除尘和噪音更糟糕的事情。¹⁰即使周围有这么多的时钟，她也从来不知道现在到底几点了！¹¹

1. People collect things.

简单句，主谓宾结构，表示经常发生的事情.

2. Stamps, books and records are common.

---

[1] 选自《新概念英语 2》，北京：外语教学与研究出版社 2019.7. 第 119 页.

简单句，主系表结构.

3. the collection I have seen belongs to a man who has clocks.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，一般现在时. 有一个省略了 that 的定语从句修饰 collection，主谓结构，现在完成时 have done；句末是 who 引导的定语从句修饰 man，主谓宾结构.

4. There are clocks.

there be 句型.

5. The living room is lined…which have been filled…

复合句，主句主谓结构，这里 line 用作动词，排列. 后面是 which 引导的定语从句，主谓结构.

6. As there is enough room, the man has filled several trucks and stored them.

复合句，主句是并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构，has filled，让别人装满；后句省略了主语的主谓宾结构. 句首是 as 引导的原因状语从句，there be 句型.

7. His wife complains about the work she has to do, for it is easy to dust…

并列复合句，for 作并列连词，前句为复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，complain about 动词词组作谓语，后面跟了一个省略了 that 的定语从句；后句为主系表结构，it 是形式主语，to dust 不定式短语作真正的主语，我们可以进行细分 ~~to~~ dust <u>several hundred</u> <u>clocks</u>. 在这里 dust 作动词，to remove dirt，擦去灰尘.

8. She complains about the noise.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

9. Each clock keeps time, so chimes can be heard.

并列句，so 作连词，前句为主谓宾结构，后句为主谓结构，被动语态.

10. there is something.

there be 句型.

11. she knows what time it is!

复合句，主句主谓 ＋ what 引导的宾语从句结构，该从句为主系表结构.

Unit Three (Lesson 49-72) 第3单元（第49-72课）不怕枯燥，读书百遍！
　欢迎语　打好一生受用的英语基础

吴应时　2022 年 2 月 10 日

　　小学毕业之后上了初中，不代表这位初中生掌握了小学阶段所有的知识。同样的，大学生在英语的基础知识上，不如优秀的初中生也是很有可能的。也正因此，对于处在打基础阶段的英语学习者而言，不要考虑自己的背景，只考虑基础到底好不好，不好，那就好好打基础。不要求快，不要贪图几天就能背一课，稀里糊涂的背下来并不能算作学会了，学扎实了。

　　我们在学业和工作中的竞争，不论我们承认与否，英语一直在扮演一个有效的筛选工具。对于学生而言，学好英语将为一生的发展打下良好的基础。中考要考，高考要考，大学还有四六级要考。大学毕业之后考研也要考，不考研的话，出国留学更需要英语。找工作也是，外企自不必说，很多公司也看重英语水平，很多岗位评职称也需要看英语水平。可以说，有所追求的一生，离不开英语。这是从功利角度而言的。

　　从个人发展的角度来说，学好英语这门工具，可以为你的梦想保留一扇窗户。你对某个领域感兴趣，英语世界中有大量跟你所见略同的人分享他们的知识和见解，只要持续阅读和了解，未来的生活视野将大为宽广。通过使用英语，可以拓展我们的眼界，不再受困于简体中文的网站，离开自己的阅读习惯所构筑的信息茧房，发现很多事情原来跟自己所以为的完全不一样。这种豁然开朗、柳暗花明的感觉，我希望你在一生中也能经历一次，这样的人生体验实在是太美妙了。

　　所有的语言学习都是艰辛的。即便是我们的母语中文，小学中学十二年，花在学习语文上的时间可一点不比花在英语上的少。可即便如此，我们很多人的中文也无法达到专家的水平，甚至有些人连写一篇没有错别字的文章都做不到，更不用要求表达通顺和论证有力了。可是我们不会认为花费了那么多时间在学习中文上是不对的，可轮到并非母语的英语，为什么我们会要求如何苛刻，幻想轻松学好呢？很多人连普通话都达不到一级乙等，却幻想说英语能发音纯正，毫无口音，这可能吗？

　　抛弃幻想，脚踏实地。未来受用一生的工具是需要时间打磨的。任何有关语法规则的讲解，都离不开你千百次的使用和练习，尤其是高频次、高密度地刻意练习。新概念英语第二册的 100 篇课文真的值得我们好好背记，反复练习。

　　这个单元的课文将继续复习第一单元的关键句型，而课文难度将在第二单元的基础上进一步加深。别担心，都是这样一步一步学上来的。你一定要写好每一篇的学习日期，这样过一年、过两年再回过头来看，你会被自己的进步所震惊，这就是坚持的力量。◇

Lesson 49 The end of a dream 美梦告终

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[Tired of sleeping on the floor], a young man (in Teheran) saved up [for years] [to buy a real bed].¹ [For the first time in his life], he became the proud owner (of a bed) (which had springs and a mattress.)² [Because the weather was [very] hot,] he carried the bed [on to the roof] (of his house).³ He slept [very] [well] [for the first two nights], but [on the third night], a storm blew up.⁴ A gust of wind swept the bed [off the roof] and sent it <crashing into the courtyard> (below).⁵ The young man did not wake up [until the bed had struck the ground.]⁶ [Although the bed was smashed [to pieces],] the man was [miraculously] unhurt.⁷ [When he woke up,] he was [still] on the mattress.⁸ [Glancing at the bits of wood and metal] (that lay [around him],) the man [sadly] picked up the mattress and carried it [into his house].⁹ [After he had put it [on the floor],] he [promptly] went [to sleep] [again].¹⁰

德黑兰的一个人年轻人由于对睡地板感到厌倦,于是存了几年钱买了一张真正的床。¹ 他平生第一次自豪地拥有了一张既有弹簧又带床垫的床。² 由于天气很热,他便把床搬到了他的屋顶上。³ 头两天晚上,他睡得非常好,但第三天晚上起了风暴,⁴ 一阵大风把床从屋顶上刮了下来,摔碎在下面的院子里。⁵ 那年轻人直到床撞到地上才醒了过来。⁶ 尽管床摔成了碎片,但年轻人却奇迹般地没有受伤。⁷ 他醒来时,仍然躺在床垫上。⁸ 年轻人看了一眼周围的碎木片和碎金属片,伤心地捡起了床垫,把它拿进了屋。⁹ 他把床垫往地板上一放,很快又睡着了。¹⁰

1. a young man saved up…

简单句，主谓结构，句首是过去分词短语作原因状语，这个状语中 tired of being sleeping…省略了 being，表达上更为简练.

2. he became the proud owner which had springs and a mattress.

复合句，主句为主系表结构，后面有一个 which 引导的定语从句修饰 owner，该从句为主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本课复习复合句的语序，需要先复习第 1 课陈述句的语序，然后是第 25 课并列句的语序.

3. Because… he carried the bed…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，句首是 because 引导的原因状语从句，主系表结构.

4. He slept, but a storm blew up.

并列句，前后两句都是主谓结构.

5. A gust of wind swept the bed and sent it crashing…

并列句，and 连接前后两个句子，前句为主谓宾结构；后句为主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

6. The young man did not wake up until the bed had struck the ground.

复合句，主句主谓结构，until 引导的时间状语从句为主谓宾结构.

7. Although…the man was unhurt.

复合句，主句主系表结构，句首是 although 引导的让步状语从句，为主谓结构.

8. When… he was on the mattress.

复合句，主句主系表结构，句首是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构.

9. the man picked up the mattress and carried it.

并列句，前句为主谓宾结构，and 后面是省略了主语的主谓宾结构. 句首是状语之中额外有一个 that 引导的定语从句，为主谓结构.

10. After he had put it, he went.

复合句，主句为主谓结构，句首是 after 引导的时间状语从句，为主谓宾结构.

Lesson 50 Taken for a ride 乘车兜风

成长足迹：20＿＿年＿＿月＿＿日

[1]I love travelling [in the country], but I don't like losing my way.¹ I went on an excursion [recently], but my trip took me longer [than I expected.]²

[2]'I'm going [to Woodford Green],' I said [to the conductor] [as I got on the bus,] 'but I don't know where it is.'³

[3]'I'll tell you where to get off.' answered the conductor.⁴

[4]I sat [in the front of the bus] [to get a good view of the countryside].⁵ [After some time], the bus stopped.⁶ [Looking round], I realized [with a shock] that I was the only passenger (left on the bus).⁷

[5]'You'll have to get off [here],' the conductor said.⁸ 'This is as far [as we go.]⁹

[6]'Is this Woodford Green?' I asked.¹⁰

[7]'^Oh dear^,' said the conductor [suddenly].¹¹ 'I forgot to put you off.'¹²

[8]'It doesn't matter,' I said.¹³ 'I'll get off [here].'¹⁴

[9]'We're going [back] [now],' said the conductor.¹⁵

[10]'^Well^, [in that case], I prefer to stay [on the bus],' I answered.¹⁶

[1]我喜欢在乡间旅行，但可不能迷路。¹最近我作了一次短途旅行，但这次旅行所花费的时间比我预计的要长。²

[2]"我要去伍德福德草地，"我一上车就对售票员说，"但我不知道它在那儿。"³

[3]"快到了我叫你下车，"售票员回答说。⁴

[4]我坐在汽车的前部，以便饱览农村风光。⁵过了一些时候，车停了。⁶我环顾了一圈，惊奇地发现车里就只剩我一个乘客了。⁷

[5]"您得在这里下车，"售票员说，⁸"我们的车就到此为止了。"⁹

[6]"这里是伍德福德草地吗？"我问道。¹⁰

[7]"哎呀，"售票员突然说，¹¹"我忘了叫你下车了。"¹²

[8]"没关系，"我说，¹³"我就在这儿下吧。"¹⁴

[9]"我们现在要回程了，"售票员说。¹⁵

[10]"好吧，既然如此，我还是倾向于留在车上吧。"我回答说。¹⁶

1. I love travelling but I don't like losing my way.

并列句，but 连接的两句均为主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 复习第 26 课，表达经常发生的事情，这些词语需要留意：love, belong to, consist of, contain, desire, detest, dislike, hate, hope, matter, mean, mind, need, want,

wish…均为动词词性.

2. I went on an excursion, but my trip took me longer than I expected.

并列复合句，but 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构，动词短语 go on 作谓语，整个 go on an excursion 是固定搭配，整体理解为谓语也可以. but 后句则可视为 take 所带的双宾语结构，me 和 longer 均为宾语，后面是 than 引导的比较状语从句，主谓结构.

3. I said as I got on the bus, but I don't know where it is.

并列复合句，这里整体上，引号里面的是一句话，没有引号的是另一句话，我们先分析没有引号的主句，这个就是主谓结构 I said，后面是 as 引导时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

引号里面的句子是 but 引导的并列复合句，前句为主谓结构，后句为主谓 + 宾语从句结构，where 引导的从句作 know 的宾语，从句是主系表结构.

4. I'll tell you where to get off.

简单句，主谓宾结构，tell 跟双宾语，直接宾语是副词 where 与不定式构成的名词结构.

5. I sat…

简单句，主谓结构，后面是动词不定式短语 to get a good view 作目的状语.

7. I realized that I was the passenger.

复合句，主谓 + 宾语从句结构，realized 后面有一个状语穿插在 that 前面，但不妨碍这是个宾语从句，从句为主系表结构.

8. You'll have to get off.

简单句，主谓结构，谓语由动词词组构成.

9. This is as far as we go.

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是典型的 as＋adv.＋as＋ 从句. 第一个 as 是副词，表程度，表示同样的，达到某个程度，修饰 far 这个副词；第二个 as 是连词，后面是比较状语从句，主谓结构.

10. Is this Woodford Green?

简单句，一般疑问句，主系表结构，正常语序 This is Woodford Green.

16. I prefer to stay.

简单句，主谓宾结构，动词不定式作宾语.

Lesson 51 Reward for virtue 对美德的奖赏

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

My friend, {Hugh}, has [always] been fat, but things got [so] bad [recently] [that he decided to go on a diet.]¹ He began his diet [a week ago].² [First of all], he wrote out a long list (of all the foods) (which were forbidden.)³ The list included most of the things (Hugh loves:) {butter, potatoes, rice, beer, milk, chocolate, and sweets}.⁴ [Yesterday] I paid him a visit.⁵ I rang the bell and was [not] surprised [to see that Hugh was [still] as fat [as ever].]⁶ He led me [into his room] and [hurriedly] hid a large parcel [under his desk].⁷ It was obvious that he was [very] embarrassed.⁸ [When I asked him what he was doing,] he smiled [guiltily] and [then] put the parcel [on the desk].⁹ He explained that his diet was [so] strict [that he had to reward himself [occasionally].]¹⁰ [Then] he showed me the contents (of the parcel).¹¹ It contained five large bars (of chocolate) and three bags (of sweets)!¹²

我的朋友休一直很胖，但是近来情况变得越发糟糕，以致他决定节食。¹他是一星期前开始节食的。²首先，他开列了一张长长的单子，上面列了所有禁吃的食物。³这张单子上包含了休喜欢吃的大部分食物：黄油、土豆、米饭、啤酒、牛奶、巧克力和糖果。⁴昨天我去看望了他。⁵我按响了门铃，当看到休仍和往常一样胖时，我并不感到惊奇。⁶他把我领进屋，慌忙把一个大包藏到了桌子下面。⁷显然他感到很尴尬。⁸当我问他正干什么时，他内疚地笑了，然后把那个大包拿到了桌上。⁹他解释说，他的饮食控制得太严格了，以致不得不偶尔奖赏自己一下。¹⁰接着他给我看了包里的东西。¹¹里面装了5大块巧克力棒和3袋糖果！¹²

1. My friend has been fat, but things got bad that he decided to go…

并列复合句，but 连接前后两句，前句为简单句，主系表结构；后句为复合句，主句为主系表结构，后面有一个 so…that 引导的结果状语从句，主谓宾结构.

2. He began his diet.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 复习一般过去时，具体可参考第 3 课的讲解. 本课都是用的一般过去时造句，请予以留意.

3. he wrote out a long list which were forbidden.

　　复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面有一个 which 引导的定语从句，主谓结构.

4. The list included most of the things (that) Hugh loves…

　　复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面有一个省略了 that 的定语从句，为主谓结构.

　　本句教材的翻译有误，这里所罗列的食物包含了休大部分喜欢的品种，也就是这份清单上所有的食物都是休喜欢吃的，但这份清单还不完全，有些休喜欢吃的没列上去，所以说是 included most of things Hugh loves. 教材的误译说大多数食物都是休喜欢吃的，意思是清单上还有他不喜欢吃的品种，如果真是这样，那为什么他需要列出来呢？

　　[关键句型] include 用了过去式 included，本句为一般过去时. 本文全都用的这个时态.

5. I paid him a visit.

　　简单句，主谓 ＋ 双宾语结构.

6. I rang the bell and was surprised…

　　并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句主谓宾结构；后句为省略了主语的主系表结构，to see…是动词不定式短语作原因状语，这个原因状语很长，里面 that 引导的从句可以看作是 see 的宾语，我们也顺便把这个宾语从句予以细分. 最后面 as ever 补充之后是状语从句 as he ever was. 不过课文中我们将其省略形式作为表语一起划分即可.

7. He led me and hid a large parcel.

　　并列句，两句都是主谓宾结构，谓语动词都用了一般过去时所要求的过去式，lead 转为 led，即 lead-led-led；然后 hide 转为 hid，即 hide-hid-hidden.

8. It was obvious that he was embarrassed.

　　复合句，主句是主系表结构，that 引导的主语从句才是真正的主语，该从句为主系表结构.

9. When I asked him what…, he smiled and put the parcel.

　　并列复合句，主句为 and 连接的并列句，均为主谓宾结构，前面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，该时间状语从句为主谓宾 ＋ 宾语从句结构，what 引导的宾语从句为主谓宾结构.

10. He explained that his diet was so strict that he had to reward himself.

　　复合句，主句为主谓 ＋ 宾语从句结构，explained 用的过去式，一般过去时，该宾语从句为主系表结构，里面又有 so…that 引导的结果状语从句，该从句为主谓宾结构.

11. he showed me the contents.

简单句，主谓 + 双宾语结构，show 用过去式 showed，一般过去时.

12. It contained five large bars and three bags.

简单句，主谓宾结构，contained 用了过去式，一般过去时.

Lesson 52 A pretty carpet 漂亮的地毯

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

We have [just] moved [into a new house] and I have been working [hard] [all morning].[1] I have been trying to get my new room in order.[2] This has not been easy [because I own over a thousand books.][3] [To make matters worse], the room is [rather] small, so I have [temporarily] put my books [on the floor].[4] [At the moment], they cover every inch (of floor space) and I [actually] have to walk [on them] [to get in or out of the room].[5] [A short while ago], my sister helped me <to carry one of my old bookcases> [up the stairs].[6] She went [into my room] and got a (big) surprise [when she saw all those books (on the floor).][7] 'This is the prettiest carpet (I have [ever] seen,)' she said.[8] She gazed at it [for some time], [then] added, 'You don't need bookcases [at all].[9] You can sit [here] [in your spare time] and read the carpet!'[10]

我们刚刚搬进一所新房子，我辛辛苦苦地干了整整一个上午。[1] 我试图把我的新房间收拾整齐，[2] 但这并不容易，因为我有 1,000 多本书。[3] 更糟糕的是房间还非常小，所以我暂时把书放在了地板上。[4] 这会儿，书把地板的每一点空隙都占据了，我实际上是踩着这些书进出房间的。[5] 几分钟前，我妹妹帮我把一个旧书柜搬上了楼。[6] 她走进我的房间，当她看到地板上的那些书时，大吃一惊。[7] "这是我见过的最漂亮的地毯，"她说。[8] 她盯着"地毯"看了一会儿，又补充道："你根本用不着书柜，[9] 空闲时你可以坐在这儿读地毯！"[10]

1. We have moved and I have been working…

并列句，and 连接前后两句，均为主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本句便是本课所需要复习的语法点，前句为现在完成时，已经完成了搬家的工作；后句为现在完成进行时，表示收拾家的工作在这一早上一直在忙着呢，对现在来说也有了些结果，收拾了一部分了，还需要继续收拾.

2. I have been trying to get…

简单句，主谓宾结构，不定式短语整体作宾语可以这样理解 ~~to~~ get my new room <in order>.

3. This has not been easy because I own over a thousand books.

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是 because 引导的原因状语从句，主谓宾结构.

4. the room is small, so I have put my books…

并列句，so 是连词，前句为主系表结构；后句为主谓宾结构.

5. they cover every inch and I have to walk.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构；后句为主谓结构. they 指书籍.

6. my sister helped me to carry…

简单句，主谓宾 + 主语补语结构，后面动词不定式短语是补充说明主语 my sister 帮忙的具体内容.

7. She went and got a surprise when she saw books.

复合句，主句是并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句主谓结构；后句为省略了主语的主谓宾结构，最后是跟了一个 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

8. This is the prettiest carpet I have seen.

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是省略了 that 的定语从句，主谓结构，宾语 that 省略了.

9. She gazed at it, then added…, You don't need bookcases.

并列句，引号里面的内容是简单句，主谓宾结构，此处不额外分析了.

主句实际上应该是并列句，前句为主谓宾结构，gaze at 动词词组作谓语，而紧接着教材的表达不严谨，造成了一个句子出现了两个谓语的情况，then 的前面要么需要加一个 and，要么需要加一个逗号，我在课文中加了逗号，以拆分成两个句子，then 此时可以作时间状语，后句则为省略了主语的主谓结构，she added.

10. You can sit and read the carpet!

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓结构；后句为省略了主语 you 的主谓宾结构.

Lesson 53 Hot snake 触电的蛇

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[At last] firemen have put out a (big forest) fire (in California).¹ [Since then], they have been trying to find out how the fire began.² Forest fires are [often] caused [by broken glass] or [by cigarette ends] (which people [carelessly] throw away.)³ [Yesterday] the firemen examined the ground [carefully], but were not able to find any broken glass.⁴ They were [also] [quite] sure that a cigarette end did not start the fire.⁵ [This morning], [however], a fireman [accidentally] discovered the cause.⁶ He noticed the remains (of a snake) (which was wound [round the electric wires] (of a 16,000-volt power line).)⁷ [In this way], he was able to solve the mystery.⁸ The explanation was simple but [very] unusual.⁹ A bird had snatched up the snake [from the ground] and [then] dropped it [on to the wires].¹⁰ The snake [then] wound itself [round the wires].¹¹ [When it did so,] it sent sparks [down to the ground] and these [immediately] started a fire.¹²

消防队员们终于扑灭了加利福尼亚州的一场森林大火。¹从那时起,他们一直试图找出起火的原因。²森林火灾时常由破碎的玻璃或人们随手扔掉的烟蒂引发。³昨天,消防队员仔细查看了地面,但未能发现碎玻璃。⁴他们还十分肯定火灾也不是由烟蒂引起的。⁵然而今天上午,一个消防队员偶然发现了起火的原因。⁶他发现了缠绕在 16,000 伏高压线上的一条死蛇。⁷就这样,他解开了大火起因谜团。⁸解释很简单，却非常罕见。⁹一只鸟把蛇从地上抓了起来，然后把它扔到了电线上。¹⁰于是蛇就缠住了几根电线。¹¹当蛇这样做时，把火花送到了地面,这些火花立刻引发了一场大火。¹²

1. firemen have put out a fire.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本课主要复习英语的时态，我们会额外讲解一些时态情况. 本句是现在完成时，have done，只不过 put 的过去式和过去分词均不变.

2. they have been trying to find…

简单句，主谓宾结构，宾语本身可以这样理解 ~~to~~ find out how the fire began. 本句为现在完成进行时，仍然在进行大火来源工作.

3. Forest fires are caused…which people throw away.

　　复合句，主句主谓结构，后面是 which 引导的定语从句，为主谓宾结构，which 本身既作引导词，又作这个从句的宾语．顺便复习一下：throw-threw-thrown.

4. the firemen examined the ground, but were not able to find glass.

　　并列句，but 连接前后两句，表转折，两句均为主谓宾结构，也都是一般过去时．

5. They were sure that a cigarette end did not start the fire.

　　复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是 that 引导的宾语从句，主谓宾结构．一般过去时．本句 end 作名词，末端之意，该词有很多意思，值得你查字典予以积累．

7. He noticed the remains which was wound…

　　复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，remains 在这里作遗体之意，后面是 which 引导的定语从句，主系表结构，这里 wound 是 wind 的过去分词，wind 作名词是风的意思，这里 wound 是过去分词作表语，表示这个死蛇呈现什么状态，并且用 round the wires 作地点状语额外说明了是在哪呈现的这个状态．

　　数字表达加逗号，可以复习第 15 课第[4]段的讲解．

9. The explanation was simple but unusual.

　　并列句，均为主系表结构，不过 but 连接的后句省略了主系部分．本句为一般过去时．

10. A bird had snatched up the snake and dropped it.

　　并列句，均为主谓宾结构，and 连接的后句省略了主语 a bird．本句为过去完成时，是 had＋done 形式．

11. The snake wound itself.

　　简单句，主谓宾结构，这里的 wound 则是动词的过去式，作谓语，而后面 round the wires 则修饰该动词，讲清楚是怎么缠绕的．注意与第 7 句相区别．本句为一般过去时．

12. When it did so, it sent sparks and these started a fire.

　　并列复合句，and 连接两句，前句为复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，有一个 when 引导的时间状语从句，也是主谓宾结构；后面是简单句，主谓宾结构．本句为一般过去时．

Lesson 54 Sticky fingers 粘糊的手指

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[After breakfast], I sent the children [to school] and [then] I went [to the shops].¹ It was [still] early [when I returned [home].]² The children were at school; my husband was at work and the house was quiet.³ So I decided to make some meat pies.⁴ [In a short time] I was busy [mixing butter and flour] and my hands were [soon] covered [with sticky pastry].⁵ [At exactly that moment], the telephone rang.⁶ Nothing could have been [more] annoying.⁷ I picked up the receiver [between two sticky fingers] and was dismayed [when I recognized the voice (of Helen Bates).]⁸ It took me ten minutes to persuade her to ring back later.⁹ [At last] I hung up the receiver.¹⁰ (What) a mess!¹¹ There was pastry [on my fingers, on the telephone, and on the doorknobs].¹² I had no sooner got back [to the kitchen] than the doorbell rang [loud] [enough] [to wake the dead].¹³ [This time] it was the postman and he wanted me <to sign for a registered letter>!¹⁴

吃过早饭后，我送孩子们上学，然后就去了商店。¹ 我回到家时，时间还算早。² 孩子们在上学，我丈夫在上班，家里清静得很。³ 于是我决定做些肉馅饼。⁴ 不一会儿我就忙着调拌起了黄油和面粉，很快我的手上就沾满了黏黏的面糊。⁵ 恰恰在此时，电话铃响了。⁶ 没有什么能比这更烦人了。⁷ 我用两个沾满面糊的手指捏起了话筒。⁸ 当听出是海伦·贝茨的声音时，非常丧气。⁸ 我用了 10 分钟的时间才说服她过会儿再来电话。⁹ 我终于挂上了话筒。¹⁰ 真是糟糕透了！¹¹ 我的手指上、电话机上以及门把手上，都沾上了面糊。¹² 我刚回到厨房，门铃又响了起来，响声足以把死人吵醒。¹³ 这次是邮递员，他要我签收一封挂号信！¹⁴

1. I sent the children and I went…

　　并列句，and 连接两个句子，前句主谓宾结构；后句主谓结构.

　　[关键句型] 本课复习第 6 课和第 30 课的冠词语言点，the children 加了定冠词，特指自己的孩子，而不是别的什么孩子.

2. It was early when I returned.

　　复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构.

3. The children were at school,(;) my husband was at work and the house was quiet.

并列句，三句话均为主系表结构. 根据语法规则，本句第一个逗号建议使用句号或者分号，而非直接用逗号连接句子，课文中我们改为了分号.

4. I decided to make…

简单句，主谓宾结构，宾语由动词不定式短语表示，该不定式短语内部的语法结构我们可以额外划分供参考：~~to~~ make some meat pies.

[关键句型] 对比 some 和 any 的用法，请查阅教材中的例句，体会不同，并查阅语法书冠词的章节.

5. I was busy… and my hands were covered…

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句主系表结构；后面则是主谓结构，一般过去时的被动语态.

6. the telephone rang.

简单句，主谓结构，the 作为定冠词，表示特定的电话响了.

7. Nothing could have been annoying.

简单句，主系表结构. 这里 annoying 是形容词作表语，同源的动词是 annoy，表示 ① to make sb slightly angry 使恼怒；使生气；② to make sb uncomfortable or unable to relax 打扰；骚扰.

8. I picked up the receiver and was dismayed when I recognized the voice.

复合句，and 连接前后两句，前句为简单句，主谓宾结构；后句为复合句，主句为省略了主语的主系表结构，后面跟了一个 when 引导的时间状语从句，也是主谓宾结构.

dismayed 在这里是形容词，其同源词 dismay，请一并学习掌握，查字典，名词和动词两个词性各是什么意思，笔记写在这里：

9. It took me ten minutes to persuade…

简单句，it 是形式主语，后面的动词不定式短语为真正主语.

10. I hung up the receiver.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

11. what a mess it is.

强调句，可以看作是主系表结构的简单句，主系部分省略了.

12. There was pastry…

There be 句型.

13. I had got back than the doorbell rang…

并列句，than 在这里作连词，连接前后两句，used in expressions showing that one

thing happens straight after another (表示一事紧跟另一事发生) 就，例：No sooner <u>had I</u> <u>sat down</u> than <u>there</u> <u>was</u> <u>a loud knock</u> [on the door]. 我刚坐下就有人大声敲门. 跟课文不同的是，这里把 no sooner 提前了，所以主谓需要部分倒装，把 had 放在了 I 之前.

than 连接的两个句子均为主谓结构.

14. it was the postman and he wanted me to sign…

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主系表结构；后句为主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

Lesson 55 Not a gold mine 并非金矿

成长足迹：20＿＿年＿＿月＿＿日

Dreams (of finding lost treasure) [almost] came true [recently].[1] A (new) machine (called 'The Revealer') has been invented and it has been used to detect gold (which has been buried [in the ground].)[2] The machine was used [in a cave] (near the seashore) ([where] — ^it is said^ — pirates used to hide gold.)[3] The pirates would [often] bury gold [in the cave] and [then] fail to collect it.[4] [Armed with the new machine], a search party went [into the cave] [hoping to find buried treasure].[5] The leader (of the party) was examining the soil (near the entrance) (to the cave) [when the machine showed that there was gold [under the ground].][6] [Very excited], the party dug a hole (two feet deep).[7] They [finally] found a (small gold) coin (which was [almost] worthless.)[8] The party [then] searched the (whole) cave [thoroughly] but did [not] find anything [except an empty tin trunk].[9] [In spite of this], many people are confident that 'The Revealer' may reveal something (of value) [fairly] [soon].[10]

最近，找到失踪宝藏的梦想差一点儿变成现实。[1]一种名为“探宝器”的新机器已经发明出来，并被人们用来探测地下埋藏的金子。[2]在靠近海边的的一个岩洞里，这种机器被派上了用场——据说——过去海盗常在里面藏金子。[3]海盗们过去常把金子埋藏在那个洞里，可后来却没能取走。[4]一支配备了新机器的探宝队进入了这个岩洞，希望找到埋藏着的金子。[5]当这个队的队长正在检查洞口附近的土壤时，那台机器显示出它的下面埋有金子。[6]队员们异常激动，就地挖了一个两英尺深的坑，[7]但最后找到的是一枚几乎一钱不值的小金币。[8]队员们接着又把整个洞彻底搜寻了一遍，但除了一件空铁皮箱外什么也没找到。[9]尽管如此，很多人仍然相信“探宝器”很快就会探出值钱的东西来。[10]

1. Dreams came true.

简单句，主系表结构.

2. A machine has been invented and it has been used to detect gold which…

并列复合句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓结构，被动语态，机器被发明了出来；后句为复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，动词不定式作宾语，后面接一个 which 引导的定

语从句，该从句为主谓结构.

3. The machine was used where pirates used to hide gold.

复合句，主句主谓结构，后面跟了一个 where 引导的定语从句，该从句中有一个 it is said 作插入语，直接划去不影响句子结构，这里特地把中文翻译也按照破折号进行了修改，以便一笔划去插入语.

4. The pirates would bury gold and fail to collect it.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，均为主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本课的关键句型为本句，表示过去习惯性的动作. 教材中的例句为：

[When I was young,] I *used to* have a lot more free time [than I do [now].] I *used to* live [near my work] and *would* [always] get [home] [early]. [Sometimes] I *would* do a bit of gardening or go [for a long walk]. [Now] I [never] have time [for anything] (like that).[1]

5. a search party went…

简单句，主谓结构，句首的过去分词短语作状语，表示伴随状态. 从句动词和主句主语是动宾关系时，常用过去分词，此处为 arm a party；当从句动词和主句主语为主谓关系时，常用现在分词，此处为 a party hopes.

6. The leader was examining the soil when the machine showed that…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，该从句为主谓 + 宾语从句结构，that 引导的宾语从句是 there be 句型.

7. the party dug a hole.

简单句，主谓宾结构，句首是过去分词作状语，同样的，excite the party 动宾关系，用过去分词.

8. They found a coin which was worthless.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面是 which 引导的定语从句为主系表结构. coin 还可以用作动词，造词、造币.

9. The party searched the cave but did find anything.

并列句，but 连接两句，均为主谓宾结构.

10. many people are confident that The Revealer may reveal something.

复合句，主句为主系表结构，后面是 that 引导的宾语从句，主谓宾结构. reveal 应该是需要重点掌握的动词，to make sth known to sb 揭示；显示；透露之意；教材却没有注解，这个词名词化就是本文的 revealer.

---

[1] 教材 P258，教材配有中文翻译，此处不予收录.

Lesson 56 Faster than sound! 比声音还快！

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[Once a year], <u>a race</u> <u>is held</u> (for old cars).¹ <u>A lot of cars</u> <u>entered for</u> <u>this race</u> [last year] and <u>there</u> <u>was</u> <u>a great deal of excitement</u> [just] [before <u>it</u> <u>began</u>.]² <u>One of the most handsome cars</u> <u>was</u> <u>a Rolls-Royce Silver Ghost</u>.³ <u>The (most unusual) car</u> <u>was</u> <u>a Benz</u> (<u>which</u> <u>had</u> <u>only three wheels</u>.)⁴ [Built in 1885], <u>it</u> <u>was</u> <u>the (oldest) car</u> (taking part).⁵ [After a great many loud explosions], <u>the race</u> <u>began</u>.⁶ <u>Many of the cars</u> <u>broke down</u> [on the course] and <u>some drivers</u> <u>spent</u> (more) <u>time</u> [*under* their cars] [than *in* them]!⁷ <u>A few cars</u>, [however], <u>completed the race</u>.⁸ <u>The (winning) car</u> <u>reached</u> <u>a speed</u> (of forty miles an hour) — {much faster than any of its rivals}.⁹ <u>It</u> <u>sped</u> [downhill] [at the end of the race] and <u>its driver</u> <u>had</u> <u>a lot of trouble</u> [trying to stop it].¹⁰ <u>The race</u> <u>gave</u> <u>everyone</u> <u>a great deal of pleasure</u>.¹¹ <u>It</u> <u>was</u> [very] <u>different</u> [from modern car races] but [no less] <u>exciting</u>.¹²

每年，都会举办一次旧款汽车的比赛。¹去年有很多汽车参加了这项比赛。²比赛开始之前，人们异常激动。²最漂亮的一款汽车是劳斯莱斯的银魅汽车，³而最不寻常的一辆则要属只有 3 只轮子的奔驰牌汽车了。⁴该车造于 1885 年，是参赛车中车龄最大的一辆。⁵在好一阵喧闹的爆炸声之后，比赛开始了。⁶很多汽车在途中就抛了锚，而有些驾驶员花**在汽车底下**的时间比**坐在汽车里面**的时间还长。⁷然而还是有几辆汽车跑完了全程。⁸获胜的那辆车达到了时速 40 英里——远远超过任何对手。⁹它在接近终点时，冲下了山坡，驾驶员费了好大劲才把车停下来。¹⁰这次比赛给每个人都带来了愉悦。¹¹它虽然与现代汽车比赛大不相同，但激情不减。¹²

1. a race is held.

简单句，主谓结构，被动语态，比赛是被举办的.

2. A lot of cars entered for this race and there was… before…

并列复合句，and 连接前后两句，前句为简单句，主谓宾结构；后句为 there be 句型，后跟一个 before 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构.

3. One was a Rolls-Royce Silver Ghost.

简单句，主系表结构，这里 one of + 复数，翻译时最漂亮的一款即可，中文表达相对来说是较为含糊的，如果非要表示是最最漂亮的，中文常会加一句"没有之一"

在后面，也就是说，平时的最漂亮都是默认不止一个的. 但在考试时，为了避免扣分，还是应该画蛇添足地把之一写出来. 教材把本句的 silver ghost 银魅翻译成 silver spirit 银灵系列了，对于专有名词的翻译，一定要核查方能确认.

4. The car was a Benz which had only three wheels.

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面跟了 which 引导的定语从句，主谓宾结构.

5. it was the oldest car.

简单句，主系表结构.

6. the race began.

简单句，主谓结构.

7. Many of the cars broke down and some drivers spent time…

并列句，and 连接两句，前句为主谓结构；后句为主谓宾结构. 这里 under 和 in 都用了斜体，表示强调，under the car 即躺在车底修车，类似于阿杜唱的"我应该在**车底**，不应该在**车里**".

break down 这个词组值得查字典积累多项意思.

[关键句型] 用于比较关系的表达，本句中 more 便是这样的词语，下句 few 也是，最后一句的 as 也是，需要留意.

8. A few cars completed the race.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

9. The car reached a speed.

简单句，主谓宾结构，后面是速度的同位语，表示这个速度比其他对手都要更快.

10. It sped and its driver had a lot of trouble.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓结构；后句为主谓宾结构. 其中 speed 也可用作动词，to move along quickly 快速前行，该词的过去式有两种，第一个是本句使用的 sped，另一个则是 speeded. 最后的 trying…是现在分词短语作方式状语.

11. The race gave everyone pleasure.

简单句，主谓宾结构，give 后面接双宾语，本句的教材翻译都不是很通顺"使每个人都挺开心"，我们稍微做了些修改.

12. It was different but exciting.

并列句，but 连接前后两句，均为主系表结构，尤其是后句，省略了主系部分. 关于后句的翻译，教材太复杂了，这里直接四个字搞定.

Lesson 57 Can I help you, madam? 您要买什么，夫人？

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

A woman (in jeans) stood [at the window] (of an expensive shop).¹ [Though she hesitated [for a moment],] she [finally] went in and asked to see a dress (that was in the window.)² The assistant (who served her) did [not] like the way (she was dressed.)³ [Glancing at her scornfully], he told her that the dress was sold.⁴ The woman walked [out of the shop] [angrily] and decided to punish the assistant [next day].⁵ She returned [to the shop] [the following morning] [dressed in a fur coat], [with a handbag in one hand and a long umbrella in the other].⁶ [After seeking out the rude assistant], she asked for the same dress.⁷ [Not realizing who she was], the assistant was eager <to serve her> [this time].⁸ [With great difficulty], he climbed [into the shop window] [to get the dress].⁹ [As soon as she saw it,] the woman said she did [not] like it.¹⁰ She enjoyed herself [making the assistant <bring almost everything in the window>] [before finally buying the dress] (she had [first] asked for.)¹¹

一位穿着牛仔裤的女士站在一家高档商店的橱窗前。¹她虽然犹豫了片刻，但终于还是走进了商店，要求把陈列在橱窗里的一件衣服拿给她看。²接待她的售货员不喜欢她的那副打扮，³轻蔑地看了她一眼后，便告诉她那件衣服已经卖出去了。⁴这位女士怒气冲冲地走出了商店，决定第二天教训一下那个售货员。⁵第二天上午，她又来到这家商店，穿了一件裘皮大衣，一只手拎着一只手提包，另一只手拿着一把长柄伞。⁶找到那个无礼的售货员后，她还要看昨天的那件衣服。⁷那个售货员没有认出她是谁，这一回接待她的态度非常殷勤。⁸费了好大劲儿，他爬进橱窗去取那件衣服。⁹这位女士对那件衣服只看一眼，就说不喜欢。¹⁰她开心地使唤那位售货员把橱窗里几乎所有的东西都拿了出来，最后才买下了她最先要看的那一件。¹¹

0. 标题

Can I help you, {madam}? 疑问句，问号写在称呼后面，男的则说 sir.

1. A woman stood…

简单句，主谓结构.

[关键句型] 留意课文中带 at, in, off 和 with 的介词短语，本句为 *at* the window，介词短语 at…在这里作地点状语.

2. though she hesitated, she went in and asked to see… that…

复合句，主句是并列句，and 连接两句，前句为主谓结构；后句为省略了主语的主谓宾结构，全句开头是 though 引导的让步状语从句，主谓结构，最后面有一个 that 引导的定语从句，主系表结构. 本句留意短语 *in* the window.

3. The assistant who…did like the way (that) she…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，然后有两个定语从句，第一个定语从句为 who 引导的，主谓宾结构；第二个则是省略了引导词 that 的定语从句，主谓宾结构.

4. he told her that the dress was sold.

复合句，主句主谓宾 + 宾语从句结构，that 引导的宾语从句为主谓结构，被动语态，被售出了. 句首是现在分词作状语.

5. The woman walked and decided to punish…

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓结构；后句为主谓宾结构，宾语是动词不定式短语，这里宾语可以这样理解：~~to punish~~ the assistant.

6. She returned…

简单句，主谓结构，dressed…这个在这里是过去分词短语作伴随状语，如果前面是这位女士的话，可以改为定语从句，比如 The woman (who dressed [in a fur coat],) returned [to the shop] [the following morning].

7. she asked for the same dress.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

8. the assistant was eager to serve…

简单句，主谓宾 + 主语补语结构，句首是现在分词的否定形式作状语，我们对于这个状语之中的动宾结构额外做了标记，里面有一个 who 引导的从句作宾语.

9. he climbed…

简单句，主谓结构.

10. As soon as she saw it, the woman said (that) she…

复合句，主句为主谓 + 宾语从句结构，该从句省略了引导词 that，从句是主谓宾结构. 句首是时间状语从句，一…就…，主谓宾结构，当女士看到衣服时就立刻说不喜欢，教材按照意思翻译成看了一眼，即表明时间很短便立刻说不喜欢了.

11. She enjoyed herself…

复合句，主谓宾结构，不过后面的方式状语可以进一步分析.

现在分词短语所作的方式状语里面可以进一步理解其动宾 + 补语的结构：~~making~~ m̶a̶k̶e̶ <u>the assistant</u> <bring…>.

最后的时间状语有一个省略了 that 的定语从句予以修饰 the dress，从句为主谓结构.

Lesson 58 A blessing in disguise? 是因祸得福吗？

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

The tiny village (of Frinley) is said to possess a 'cursed tree'.[1] [Because the tree was mentioned [in a newspaper],] the number of visitors (to Frinley) has [now] increased.[2] The tree was planted [near the church] [fifty years ago], but it is [only] [in recent years] that it has gained an (evil) reputation.[3] It is said that [if anyone touches the tree,] he will have bad luck; [if he picks a leaf,] he will die.[4] Many villagers believe that the tree has [already] claimed a number of victims.[5] The vicar has been asked <to have the tree cut down>, but [so far] he has refused.[6] He has pointed out that the tree is a useful source of income, [as tourists have been coming [from all parts] (of the country) [to see it].][7] [In spite of all] (that has been said,) the tourists have been picking leaves and cutting their names [on the tree-trunk].[8] [So far], not one of them has been struck down [by sudden death]![9]

据说弗林利这个小村里有一棵"被诅咒的树"。[1] 就因为报纸上提到过这棵树，所以现在来弗林利参观的人越来越多。[2] 该树是 50 年前栽在教堂附近的，但只是近几年才得到了一个坏名声。[3] 据说，谁要是触摸了这棵树，谁就会交上恶运；如果谁摘了一片树叶，谁就会死去。[4] 很多村民相信此树已经造成了很多受害者。[5] 人们曾请求教区的牧师叫人把树砍掉，但他直到现在也没有同意。[6] 他指出这棵树是很好的收入来源，因为人们从全国各地纷纷前来参观这棵树。[7] 尽管有上述种种说法，但游客们还是照常摘树叶和把他们的名字刻在树干上。[8] 然而到目前为止，还没有一个人因此暴死呢！[9]

0. 标题

A blessing in disguise? 这是个习惯表达，中文意思可以说是塞翁失马，在使用中，整体常作为表语来使用，比如：[In a way], it was a blessing in disguise.[1] 在某种程度上，也算是塞翁失马了. 更细致一点理解，你可以认为 in disguise 是后置定语，修饰这个 blessing.

1. The village is said to possess a 'cursed tree'.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

---

[1] 选自：https://www.npr.org/templates/story/story.php?storyId=18918478

[关键句型] 被动语态的复习，本句需要留意 is said 的表达，据说，正常表达则是 someone said the village…此外，本文主要用了现在完成时来讲这个故事.

2. Because…, the number of visitors has increased.

复合句，主句主谓结构，句首是 because 引导的原因状语从句. the tree was mentioned 同样是被动语态，正常表达是 the newspaper mentioned the tree.

3. The tree was planted, but it has gained a reputation.

并列句，but 连接前后两句，前句为主谓结构，被动语态；后句为强调句，it is…that 结构，后句的主干为主谓宾结构.

4. It is said that…if¹… + if²…

复合句，主句为主谓结构，it 作形式主语，后面 that 引导的从句作真正的主语. it 没有实际指代意义时，真正的主语往往在后面. 这里 it is said 也是被动语态的表达方式.

主语从句中有两个并列的复合句，均为 if 引导的条件状语从句 + 主句的结构，主句和从句也都是主谓(宾)结构.

5. Many villagers believe that the tree has claimed a number of victims.

复合句，主句为主谓 + that 引导的宾语从句结构. 这个宾语从句为主谓宾结构，谓语部分用了现在完成时，have done，而不是被动语态，当然，这里可以转换为被动语态，仅作说明：A number of victims were claimed [by the tree].

claim 在这里是 to cause sb's death 夺走，夺去（生命）的意思，一般习惯于用主动语态. 其他义项很多，请查字典.

6. The vicar has been asked to have…, but he has refused.

并列句，but 连接前后两句，前句为主谓 + 主语补语结构，也正是因为这里用了被动语态，使得宾语补语成为了主语补语，我们还原成主动语态：The villagers have asked the vicar <to have…>，这个主语补足语本身也可以划分一下 to have the dree <cut down>.

后句为简单句，主谓结构.

7. He has pointed out that the tree is a useful source of income, as…

复合句，主句主谓 +that 引导的宾语从句结构，后面还跟了一个 as 引导的原因状语从句. 宾语从句是主系表结构，原因状语从句是主谓结构.

8. the tourists have been picking leaves and cutting their names…

并列句，句首是一个让步状语，并非从句，但是这个让步状语中有一个 that 引导的定语从句修饰 all，主谓结构，被动语态；后面的句子是 and 连接的并列句，均为主

谓宾结构.

9. not one of them has been struck down…

简单句，主谓结构，也是被动语态，has been struck down.

Lesson 59 In or out? 进来还是出去？

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Our dog, {Rex}, used to sit [outside our front gate] and bark.[1] [Every time he wanted to come into the garden,] he would bark [until someone opened the gate.][2] [As the neighbours complained of the noise,] my husband spent weeks [training him to press his paw on the latch] [to let himself in].[3] Rex [soon] became an expert (at opening the gate).[4] [However], [when I was going out shopping [last week],] I noticed him <in the garden> (near the gate).[5] [This time] he was barking [so that someone would let him <out>!][6] [Since then], he has developed another bad habit.[7] [As soon as he opens the gate [from the outside],] he comes into the garden and waits [until the gate shuts.][8] [Then] he sits and barks [until someone lets him <out>.][9] [After this] he [immediately] lets himself <in> and begins barking [again].[10] [Yesterday] my husband removed the gate and Rex got [so] annoyed [that we have [not] seen him [since.]][11]

我家的狗雷克斯，过去常坐在大门外面叫。[1]每当它想到花园里来时，便汪汪叫个不停，直到有人把门打开。[2]由于邻居们对狗叫很有意见，所以我丈夫花了几个星期的时间训练它用脚爪按住门闩把自己放进来。[3]雷克斯很快成了开门的专家。[4]然而上星期我正要出去买东西时，发现它正呆在花园里边靠门的地方。[5]这次它叫着，好让人把它放出去！[6]从那以后，它养成了另外一个坏习惯。[7]它从外面把门一打开，就走进花园，等着门自动关上。[8]这之后他就坐下汪汪叫起来，直到有人来把它放出去。[9]出去之后，它又马上把自己放进来，接着再开始叫。[10]昨天，我丈夫把门卸了下来，雷克斯很生气，此后我们便再也没有见到它。[11]

1. Our dog used to sit and bark.

简单句，主谓结构，谓语为并列的两个动词，and 后面的动词实际上省略了前面的 used to.

[关键句型] 本课为复习课，本句复习第 50 课关键句型，习惯性动作的表达.

2. Every time…, he would bark until someone opened the gate.

复合句，主句主谓结构，句首是 every time 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构，该句结尾的 garden 后面有一个逗号会更为规范，此处补上一个逗号. 句末是 until 引导的

另一个时间状语从句,也是主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本句的从句复习第 51 课一般过去时;本句的主句复习第 55 课,表达过去习惯性动作.

3. As…, my husband spent weeks…

复合句,主句主谓宾结构,后面现在分词短语作状语部分可以细分 ~~training~~ him <to press his paw on the latch>. 目的状语也可以细分 ~~to~~ let himself <in>. 句首是 as 引导的原因状语从句. 本句仍为一般过去时.

4. Rex became an expert.

简单句,主系表结构,后面是介词短语作后置定语,修饰这是个什么样的专家. 本句采用一般过去时.

5. when I was going out shopping I noticed him in…

复合句,主句主谓宾 + 宾补结构,句首是 when 引导的时间状语从句,主谓结构. 主句采用一般过去时,从句用了过去进行时.

6. he was barking so that someone…

复合句,主句为主谓结构,过去进行时;so that 引导的目的状语从句为主谓宾 + 宾补结构,主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

7. he has developed another bad habit.

简单句,主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本句复习第 52 课现在完成时.

8. As soon as he opens the gate, he comes into the garden and waits until the gate shuts.

复合句,主句主谓宾,两个谓语由 and 连接,前后各有一个时间状语从句,前面的从句为主谓宾结构,后面 until 引导的为主谓结构. 本句均为一般现在时.

9. he sits and barks until…

复合句,主句为主谓结构,两个并列动词作谓语;后面是 until 引导的时间状语从句,为主谓宾 + 宾补结构,两句均为一般现在时

10. he lets himself in and begins barking.

并列句,and 连接前后两句,前句为主谓宾 + 宾补结构;后句为省略了主语的主谓宾结构. 本句为一般现在时.

11. my husband removed the gate and Rex got so annoyed that we…

并列复合句,and 前句为简单句,主谓宾结构;后句为复合句,主句主系表结构,后面是 so…that 引导的结果状语从句,主谓宾结构. 两个主句为一般过去时,状语从句为现在完成时. 教材中没有写 that,一般而言,非正式语体,如口语中,so 或者 that 均

可以省略，但这里是作为教材供学生学习和背诵的，最好还是把 that 加进来，背就背更为规范的表达. 教材的难点部分提供了大量例句用于区分 to, in order to, so as to, so that, in order that 等表示目的的方式.

[关键句型] 课文并没有内容涉及第 58 课的被动语态，请回到上一课自行复习.

Lesson 60 The future　卜算未来

　　[1][At a village fair], I decided to visit a fortune-teller (called Madam Bellinsky).¹ I went into her tent and she told me <to sit down>.² [After I had given her some money,] she looked into a (crystal) ball and said:³ 'A relation (of yours) is coming [to see you].⁴ She will be arriving [this evening] and intends to stay [for a few days].⁵ [The moment you leave this tent,] you will get a (big) surprise.⁶ A woman (you know [well]) will rush [towards you].⁷ She will speak [to you] and [then] she will lead you [away from this place].⁸ That is all.⁹'

　　[2][As soon as I went [outside],] I forgot all (about Madam Bellinsky) [because my wife hurried [towards me].]¹⁰ '[Where] have you been hiding?' she asked [impatiently].¹¹ 'Your sister will be here [in less than an hour] and we must be at the station [to meet her].¹² We are late [already].¹³' [As she walked away,] I followed her [out of the fair].¹⁴

　　[1]在一个乡村集市上，我决定去拜访一位称作别林斯基夫人的算命人。¹我走进她的帐篷，她叫我坐下。²我给了她一些钱后，她便查看着一个水晶球说道：³"您的一个亲戚就要来看您了。⁴她将于今天傍晚到达，并准备住上几天。⁵您一走出这个帐篷，就会大吃一惊。⁶一位您很熟悉的女人将向您冲来。⁷她会对您说点什么，然后带您离开这个地方。⁸就是这些。⁹"

　　[2]我一走出帐篷，就把别林斯基夫人给算卦的事忘得一干二净了，因为我的妻子正匆匆向我跑来。¹⁰"你躲到哪儿去了？"她不耐烦地问¹¹，"再有不到一个小时你姐姐就要到这儿了，我们得去车站接她。¹²现在就已经晚了。¹³"当她走开时，我也跟着她出了集市。¹⁴

1. I decided to visit…

　　简单句，主谓宾结构，过去分词短语作后置定语，而如果是 a fortune-teller, {Madam Bellinsky}. 则为同位语.

2. I went into her tent and she told me to sit…

　　并列句，and 前句为主谓宾结构；后句为主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

3. After I had given her some money, she looked into a ball.

　　复合句，主句主谓宾结构，句首是 after 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构，give

后面接了双宾语.

4. A relation is coming.

简单句，主谓结构，现在进行时表将来.

[关键句型] 复习表示将要发生的事情，可以参阅第 36 课.

5. She will be arriving and intends to stay.

并列句，前句为主谓结构，后句为省略了主语的主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 前句用了将来进行时，will be doing 形式.

6. The moment you leave this tent, you will get a surprise.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，前面是时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 一般将来时，will do 形式.

7. A woman (that) you know will rush…

复合句，主句主谓结构，一般将来时，中间有一个定语从句，主谓结构.

8. She will speak and she will lead you.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句主谓结构；后句主谓宾结构，两句均为一般将来时.

10. As soon as I went, I forgot all because my wife hurried.

复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，前面有一个 as soon as 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构，后面是 because 引导的原因状语从句，主谓结构.

11. Where have you been hiding?

特殊疑问句，正常语序 you have been hiding…，现在完成进行时，have been doing 形式.

12. Your sister will be here and we must be at the station.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，均为主系表结构.

14. As she walked away, I followed her.

复合句，主句主谓宾，前面是 as 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构.

Lesson 61 Trouble with the Hubble 哈勃望远镜的困境

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

The Hubble telescope was launched [into space] [by NASA] [on April 20,1990] [at a cost of over a billion dollars].[1] [Right from the start] there was trouble (with the Hubble).[2] The pictures (it sent us) were [very] disappointing [because its main mirror was faulty!][3] NASA is [now] going to put the telescope <right>, so it will [soon] be sending up four astronauts <to repair it>.[4] The shuttle {*Endeavour*} will be taking the astronauts [to the Hubble].[5] A robot-arm (from the *Endeavour*) will grab the telescope and hold it [while the astronauts make the (necessary) repairs.][6] [Of course], the Hubble is above the earth's atmosphere, so it will [soon] be sending us the (clearest) pictures (of the stars and distant galaxies) (that we have [ever] seen.)[7] The Hubble will tell us a great deal (about the age and size of the universe).[8] [By the time] (you read this,) the Hubble's eagle eye will have sent us thousands and thousands of wonderful pictures.[9]

哈勃望远镜于 1990 年 4 月 20 日由美国国家航空航天局发射升空，耗资 10 多亿美元。[1] 从最开始哈勃望远镜就有问题。[2] 它传送给我们的图像很令人失望，因为它的主要镜子有误差。[3] 国家航空航天局准备纠正这一错误，为此将把 4 名宇航员送入太空修复望远镜。[4] "奋进"号航天飞机将把宇航员送上哈勃。[5] 当宇航员进行必要的修复工作时，"奋进"号上的一只机器手将抓住望远镜并托住它。[6] 当然，哈勃位于地球的大气层之外，因此，它很快就会给我们传送我们所见到过的、有关行星和远距离星系的最清晰的照片。[7] 哈勃将告诉我们有关宇宙的年龄和大小的许多事情。[8] 等到你读到这篇文章时，敏锐的哈勃望远镜已经为我们送来了成千上万张精彩的照片。[9]

1. The Hubble telescope was launched…

简单句，主谓结构，用了被动语态.

2. there was trouble…

there be 句型.

3. The pictures (that) it send us were disappointing because…

复合句，主句为主系表结构，定语从句 it send us 修饰 pictures，主谓宾结构；后面

是 because 引导的原因状语从句，主系表结构.

4. NASA is going to put the telescope…, so it will be sending up four astronauts…

并列句，so 作连词，前句为主谓宾 + 宾补结构，该句为一般将来时；后句为主谓宾 + 宾补结构. astronaut 是国外的宇航员，中国航天则称航天员，taikonaut.

[关键句型] 本句的后半句为将来进行时，will be doing.

5. The shuttle will be taking the astronauts…

简单句，主谓宾结构，将来进行时.

6. A robot-arm will grab the telescope and hold it while…

复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，有两个动作，grab 和 hold，均作谓语，或者你可以理解成是并列句，第二句省略了主语和助动词 will，即 A robot-arm will hold it. 后面是 while 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

7. the Hubble is above the earth's atmosphere, so it will be sending us the pictures that…

并列复合句，so 连接前后两句，前句为主系表结构；后句为复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，后面有一个 that 引导定语从句，修饰 pictures，为主谓宾结构. 后句的主句为将来进行时.

8. The Hubble will tell us a great deal…

简单句，主谓宾结构，tell 接双宾语.

9. the Hubble's eagle eye will have sent us pictures.

简单句，本句本身是主谓宾结构，send 后面接双宾语. 句首是一个时间状语，不过比较特殊的是，这个时间状语带有一个定语从句修饰 time，该定语从句为主谓宾结构. eagle eye 是一个俗语，通常情况下，eye 用单数. [If sb has an eagle eye,] they watch things [carefully] and are good [at noticing things]. 敏锐的眼光；锐利的目光.

[关键句型] 本句复习将来完成时，句中 will have done 结构即为其构成形式. 教材中本课还需要顺便复习将来完成进行时,will have been doing 结构，课文没有涉及，请查看教材额外给出的例句.

Lesson 62 After the fire 大火之后

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Firemen had been fighting the forest fire [for nearly three weeks] [before they could get it <under control>.][1] [A short time before], great trees had covered the countryside [for miles around].[2] [Now], smoke [still] rose up [from the warm ground] [over the desolate hills].[3] Winter was coming on and the hills threatened the (surrounding) villages [with destruction], for heavy rain would not only wash away the soil but would cause (serious) floods [as well].[4] [When the fire had [at last] been put out,] the forest authorities ordered several tons of a special type of grass-seed (which would grow [quickly].)[5] The seed was sprayed [over the ground] [in huge quantities] [by aeroplanes].[6] The planes had been planting seed [for nearly a month] [when it began to rain.][7] [By then], [however], [in many places] the grass had [already] taken root.[8] [In place of the great trees] (which had been growing [there] [for centuries],) patches (of green) had begun to appear [in the blackened soil].[9]

消防队员们同那场森林大火搏斗了将近 3 个星期才把火势控制住。[1] 就在不久之前,参天大树还覆盖着方圆数英里的土地。[2] 而现在,发热的地面上仍然升腾着烟雾,弥漫在荒凉的山丘上。[3] 冬季即将到来,这些山丘对周围的村庄具有毁灭性的威胁,因为大雨不仅会冲走土壤,而且还会引起严重的水灾。[4] 在大火终于被扑灭后,森林管理当局订购了好几吨一种速生的特殊类型的草籽。[5] 飞机把这种草籽大量地撒播在土地上。[6] 飞机撒播种子近一个月后,开始下起雨来。[7] 然而到那时,很多地方的草已经生了根。[8] 一片片的绿草开始出现在这片烧焦的土地上,代替了多少世纪以来一直生长在那里的参天大树。[9]

1. Firemen had been fighting the forest fire before…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，before 引导的时间状语从句为主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

[关键句型] 本句的主句为过去完成进行时，had been doing 结构. 教材中讲解说是在过去某一时刻之前一直进行的动作，在本句中一直进行的 fighting 动作就是在时间状语从句之前发生的.

2. great trees had covered the countryside.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本句为过去完成时，had done 结构. 前两句所涉及的时态即为本课的复习内容.

3. smoke rose up…

简单句，主谓结构，用了一般过去时，rise→rose. 这个单词是不规则的，请予以记忆：rise, rose, risen /ˈrɪzn/.

4. Winter was coming on[1] and the hills threatened the villages[2], for heavy rain would wash away the soil[3] and would cause floods[4].

并列句，全句整体上由并列连词 for 予以连接，并非原因状语从句，前后两句各自又是并列句，实际上这个句子由四个简单句构成. 我在主干上予以标记序号，其中 1 和 2 句为 for 的前句，3 和 4 句为 for 的后句. 1. 主谓结构，过去进行时，本句 come on 是 to begin by degrees 之意，严格意义上说，是冬季的逐渐来临；2. 主谓宾结构，一般过去时；3 和 4 均为主谓宾结构，表示可能发生的情况.

5. When… the forest authorities ordered grass-seed which…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，一般过去时，前面有 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构，had been done 过去完成时的被动语态；最后有一个 which 引导的定语从句，修饰草种，主谓结构.

6. The seed was sprayed.

简单句，主谓结构，一般过去时的被动语态，种子是被播撒的.

7. The planes had been planting seed when…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，过去完成进行时，when 引导的时间状语从句为主谓宾结构，一般过去时. 从本句可以再理解一次在某一过去的时刻之前是什么意思，本句的从句 when…用了一般过去时，已经是过去的时刻了，这时我们又描述在过去的这个时刻，飞机一直在播撒种子，所以主句用过去完成进行时.

8. the grass had taken root.

简单句，主谓宾结构，过去完成时.

9. patches had begun to appear.

简单句，主谓宾结构，过去完成时，句首的地点状语中，额外有一个定语从句，我们予以分析，该 which 引导的定语从句，为主谓结构，用了过去完成进行时.

Lesson 63 She was not amused 她并不觉得好笑

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Jeremy Hampden <u>has</u> a large circle of friends and <u>is</u> [very] <u>popular</u> [at parties].[1] <u>Everybody</u> <u>admires</u> <u>him</u> [for his great sense of humour] — <u>everybody</u>, ^<u>that</u> <u>is</u>^, [except his six-year-old daughter], {Jenny}.[2] [Recently], <u>one of Jeremy's closest friends</u> <u>asked</u> <u>him</u> <to make a speech> [at a wedding reception].[3] <u>This</u> <u>is</u> <u>the sort of thing</u> (that <u>Jeremy</u> <u>loves</u>.)[4] <u>He</u> <u>prepared</u> <u>the speech</u> [carefully] and <u>went</u> [to the wedding] [with Jenny].[5] <u>He</u> <u>had included</u> <u>a large number of funny stories</u> [in the speech] and, ^of course^, <u>it</u> <u>was</u> <u>a great success</u>.[6] [As soon as <u>he</u> <u>had finished</u>,] <u>Jenny</u> <u>told</u> <u>him</u> <u>she</u> <u>wanted</u> to go home.[7] <u>Jeremy</u> <u>was</u> <u>a little disappointed</u> [by this] but <u>he</u> <u>did</u> [as <u>his daughter</u> <u>asked</u>.][8] [On the way home], <u>he</u> <u>asked</u> <u>Jenny</u> if <u>she</u> <u>had enjoyed</u> <u>the speech</u>.[9] ^To his surprise^, <u>she</u> <u>said</u> <u>she</u> <u>hadn't</u>.[10] <u>Jeremy</u> <u>asked</u> <u>her</u> <u>why</u> <u>this</u> <u>was</u> <u>so</u> and <u>she</u> <u>told</u> <u>him</u> <u>that</u> <u>she</u> <u>did</u> [not] <u>like</u> <u>to see so many people laughing at him</u>![11]

杰里米·汉普登交际甚广，是各种聚会上深受大家欢迎的人。[1] 人人都欣赏他那绝妙的幽默感——人人，就是说，除他 6 岁的女儿珍妮之外的每一个人。[2] 最近，杰里米的一个最亲密的朋友请他在一个婚礼上祝词。[3] 这正是杰里米喜欢做的事情。[4] 他认真准备了讲稿，带着珍妮一道去参加了婚礼。[5] 他的祝词里面加进了大量有趣的故事，自然大获成功。[6] 他刚一讲完，珍妮就对他说她要回家。[7] 这不免使杰里米有点扫兴，但他还是按照女儿的要求做了。[8] 在回家的路上，他问珍妮是否喜欢他的祝词。[9] 使他吃惊的是，她说她不喜欢。[10] 杰里米问他为何不喜欢，她说她不愿意看到那么多的人嘲笑他！[11]

1. Jeremy Hampden has a circle of friends and is popular…

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句是主谓宾结构，后句省略了主语，主系表结构.

2. Everybody admires him.

简单句，主谓宾结构，破折号后面是一个分句，可以理解为补充说明，只有女儿不喜欢他，不过并非完整的句子，except 引导的状语表达了具体的内容.

3. one asked him to make…

简单句，主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

[关键句型] 复习间接引语，这里是某人让他做什么，是转达了某人的话，而不是直接用引号把某人的话原话不变地转达. 即是以 He asked him to do…的形式来转达的，而不是 He said "Could you please make a speech on my wedding reception?"

4. This is the sort of thing that…

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是 that 引导的定语从句，主谓宾结构.

5. He prepared the speech and went…

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构；后句为省略了主语的主谓结构.

6. He had included stories and it was a success.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构；后句主系表结构.

7. As soon as… Jenny told him (that) she…

复合句，主句为主谓宾 + 省略了 that 的宾语从句结构，该宾语从句为主谓宾结构. 句首是时间状语从句，主谓结构.

[关键句型] 同样，Jenny told him that…也是间接引语.

8. Jeremy was a little disappointed but he did as…

并列复合句，but 连接前后两句，前句是简单句，主系表结构；后句为复合句，主句为主谓结构，后面跟一个 as 引导的方式状语从句，主谓结构.

9. he asked Jenny if…

复合句，主谓宾 + if 引导的宾语从句结构，if 在这里引导从句，该从句为主谓宾结构.

10. he said (that) she hadn't.

复合句，主句为主谓 + 省略了 that 的宾语从句结构，该从句为主谓结构.

11. Jeremy asked her why… and she told him that…

并列复合句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾 + why 引导的宾语从句结构，该从句为主系表结构；后句为主谓宾 + that 引导的宾语从句结构，该从句也是主谓宾结构，另外，我们可以额外细分动词不定式短语所构成的宾语：~~to~~ see so many people <laughing at him>.

[关键句型] 本句连着两个宾语从句都是间接引语的表达.

Lesson 64 The Channel Tunnel 海峡隧道

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[In 1858], a French engineer, {Aimé Thomé de Gamond}, arrived [in England] [with a plan] (for a twenty-one-mile tunnel under the English Channel).[1] He said that it would be possible to build a platform [in the centre of the Channel].[2] This platform would serve [as a port and a railway station].[3] The tunnel would be well-ventilated [if tall chimneys were built [above sea level].][4] [In 1860], a better plan was put forward [by an Englishman], {William Low}.[5] He suggested that a double railway-tunnel should be built.[6] This would solve the problem (of ventilation), for [if a train entered this tunnel,] it would draw in fresh air [behind it].[7] [Forty-two years later] a tunnel was [actually] begun.[8] [If, ^[at the time]^, the British had [not] feared invasion,] it would have been completed.[9] The world had to wait [almost another 100 years] [for the Channel Tunnel].[10] It was [officially] opened [on March 7,1994], [finally] [connecting Britain to the European continent].[11]

1858 年，一位名叫埃梅·托梅·德·干蒙的法国工程师带着一个方案到了英国，有关建造一条长 21 英里、穿越英吉利海峡的隧道。[1]他表示可以在隧道中央建造一座平台，[2]这座平台将用作码头和火车站。[3]如果再建些伸出海面的高大的烟囱状通风管，隧道就具备了良好的通风条件。[4]1860 年，一位名叫威廉·洛的英国人提出了一项更好的计划。[5]他提议建一条双轨隧道，[6]这样就解决了通风问题。[7]因为如果有列火车开进隧道，它就把新鲜空气随之抽进了隧道。[7]42 年以后，隧道才实际开始修建。[8]如果不是因为那时英国人害怕受到入侵，隧道早已建成了。[9]世界不得不再等将近 100 年才看到海峡隧道竣工。[10]它于 1994 年 3 月 7 日正式开通，终于把英国与欧洲大陆连到了一起。[11]

1. an engineer arrived…

简单句，主谓结构. 本句修饰成分比较多，尤其是 for…所引导的介词短语作后置定语，修饰 plan. 对于较长修饰成分的句子，我们在翻译时可以拆成短句，教材用了个长句来翻，看着相对来说会比较累一些.

2. He said that it would be possible to build…

复合句，主句为主谓 + 宾语从句结构，that 引导的宾语从句以 it 作形式主语，to

build 动词不定式短语作实际主语.

3. This platform would serve…

简单句，主谓结构.

4. The tunnel would be well-ventilated if tall chimneys were built.

复合句，主句主系表结构，从句是 if 引导的条件状语从句，主谓结构.

5. a better plan was put forward…

简单句，主谓结构，用了被动语态，方案是被提出的.

6. He suggested that a double railway-tunnel should be built.

复合句，主句主谓 + 宾语从句结构，该从句为主谓结构.

[关键句型] 虚拟语气，本句的 that 引导的宾语从句中，谓语用了 should + 动词的原型，是虚拟语气的用法，这里的 should 可以省略.

7. This would solve the problem, for if a train entered this tunnel, it would draw in fresh air…

并列复合句，for 在这里是并列连词，连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构；后句为复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，从句为 if 引导的条件状语从句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本句 for 后面引导的句子使用了虚拟语气，从句用了 did 形式；主句用了 would + do 形式，此处为与将来情况相反的假设，前半句说的是将会解决这个问题，那么未来如果这样做了，就可以怎样. 对于与将来情况相反的假设，其主句的表达形式和与过去情况相反的假设完全一致，而从句则为 did 或 were 形式，还有 were to do 和 should do 形式，具体可以看第 40 课的表格对比.

8. a tunnel was begun.

简单句，主谓结构，被动语态，被开始修建.

9. If the British had feared invasion, it would have been completed.

复合句，主句为主谓结构，用了被动语态，被建成；从句为 if 引导的条件状语从句. 本句使用了虚拟语气，与过去情况相反的假设.

10. The world had to wait.

简单句，主谓结构.

11. It was opened…

简单句，主谓结构.

Lesson 65 Jumbo versus the police 小象对警察

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[Last Christmas], the circus owner, {Jimmy Gates}, decided to take some presents [to a children's hospital].¹ [Dressed up as Father Christmas] and [accompanied by a 'guard of honour' of six pretty girls], he set off [down the main street] (of the city) [riding a baby elephant] (called Jumbo).² He should have known that the police would [never] allow this sort of thing.³ A policeman approached Jimmy and told him he ought to have gone [along a side street] [as Jumbo was holding up the traffic.]⁴ [Though Jimmy agreed to go [at once],] Jumbo refused to move.⁵ Fifteen policemen had to push [very hard] [to get him off the main street].⁶ The police had a (difficult) time, but they were [most] amused.⁷ 'Jumbo must weigh a few tons,' said a policeman [afterwards], 'so it was fortunate that we didn't have to carry him.⁸ [Of course], we should arrest him, but [as he has a (good) record,] we shall let him <off> [this time].'⁹

去年圣诞节，马戏团老板吉米·盖茨决定送些礼物给儿童医院。¹他装扮成圣诞老人，在由 6 个漂亮姑娘组成的"仪仗队"的陪同下，骑上一头名叫江伯的小象，沿着城里的主要街道出发了。²他本该知道警察绝不会允许这类事情发生。³一个警察走过来告诉吉米，他应该走一条小路，因为江泊阻碍了交通。⁴虽然吉米同意马上就走，但江伯却拒绝移动。⁵15 个警察不得不用很大的力气把它从主要街道推开。⁶警察虽然吃了苦头，但他们还是感到很有趣。⁷"江伯一定有好几吨重，"一个警察事后这样说，"值得庆幸的是它没让我们抬它走。⁸当然，我们应该逮捕它，但考虑到它没有违规记录，这次我们就饶了它。"⁹

1. the circus owner decided to take…

　　简单句，主谓宾结构.

2. … he set off…

　　简单句，本句前面都是起修饰作用的状语，补充说明主人公的行头，又是装扮成圣诞老人，又是有仪仗队护送的. jumbo 本身是形容词，巨大的之意，名词则用于词组 jumbo jet 大型客机（尤指波音 747）.

3. He should have known that the police would allow this…

复合句，主句主谓 + 宾语从句结构，that 引导的宾语从句也是主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本课复习 must, have to, should, and ought to，注意这些情态动词在句子中的含义，本句的 should 是本该知道但又没按照所知道的来行事.

4. A policeman approached Jimmy and told him he ought to have gone as…

并列复合句，and 连接前后两句，前句主谓宾结构；后句为省略了主语的主谓宾 + 宾语从句结构，这个宾语从句省略了 that，宾语从句为主谓结构，里面包含一个 as 引导的原因状语从句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] 本句的 ought to 需要留意，used to indicate duty or correctness, typically when criticizing someone's actions [常用于批评某人行为，表示责任、义务、正确性的] 应该，应当.

5. Though Jimmy agreed to go, Jumbo refused to move.

复合句，句首是让步状语从句，主从两句均为主谓宾结构.

6. Fifteen policemen had to push.

简单句，主谓结构.

7. The police had a time, but they were amused.

并列句，but 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构；后句为主系表结构.

8. Jumbo must weigh a few tons, so it was fortunate that…

并列复合句，so 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构；后句为 it 作形式主语，that 从句作真正主语的复合句，主语从句为主谓宾结构.

9. we should arrest him, but as he has a record, we shall let him off.

并列复合句，but 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构；后句为复合句，主句为主谓宾 + 宾补结构，还有一个 as 引导的原因状语从句，这个 record 在警方那其实就是犯罪记录、违规记录的意思，课文中意译为一贯表现很好.

Lesson 66 Sweet as honey! 像蜜一样甜！

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[In 1963] a Lancaster bomber crashed [on Wallis Island], {a remote place} (in the South Pacific), (a long way west of Samoa).[1] The plane wasn't [too badly] damaged, but [over the years], the crash was forgotten and the wreck remained undisturbed.[2] [Then in 1989], [twenty-six years after the crash], the plane was [accidentally] rediscovered [in an aerial survey] (of the island).[3] [By this time], a Lancaster bomber (in reasonable condition) was rare and worth rescuing.[4] The French authorities had the plane <packaged> and <moved> [in parts] [back to France].[5] [Now] a group of enthusiasts are going to have the plane <restored>.[6] It has (four Rolls-Royce Merlin) engines, but the group will need to have only three of them rebuilt.[7] Imagine their surprise and delight [when they broke open the packing cases and found that the fourth engine was sweet as honey — [still] in perfect condition.][8] A colony of bees had turned the engine [into a hive] and it was [totally] preserved [in beeswax]![9]

1963 年，一架兰开斯特轰炸机在瓦立斯岛坠毁。[1]那是南太洋中一个偏远的岛屿，离萨摩亚群岛西边很远。[1]飞机损坏的程度并不严重，但是，多年来这起飞机失事已被遗忘，飞机残骸也没受到破坏。[2]于是，到了 1989 年，飞机失事 26 年后，在对小岛的一次航空勘查中，那架飞机意外地被再次发现了。[3]到了那个时候，状况良好的兰开斯特轰炸机实属罕见，值得挽救。[4]法国政府派人把飞机打包起来，分成各部分运回法国。[5]一群热心人士计划修复这架飞机。[6]该飞机装配有 4 台劳斯莱斯的默林发动机，但是他们只需要修复其中的 3 台。[7]想一想他们所感受到的惊奇和兴奋——当他们拆开包装箱时，他们发现第 4 台发动机就像蜂蜜一样甜——发动机完好无损。[8]一群蜜蜂把发动机当作了蜂房，发动机在蜂蜡中被完整地保存了下来。[9]

1. a Lancaster bomber crashed…

简单句，主谓结构. 后面关于具体位置的补充成分其实并不重要，教材翻译得极为冗长，本处予以简化. 本句为一般过去时，整个故事都是在讲过去发生的一个事情.

2. The plane wasn't damaged[1], but the crash was forgotten[2] and the wreck remained

undisturbed³.

　　并列句，but 和 and 分别连接起这三个简单句，1. 主谓结构；2. 主谓结构；3. 主系表结构.

3. the plane was rediscovered…

　　简单句，主谓结构，一般过去时的被动语态，被重新发现.

4. a Lancaster bomber was rare and worth rescuing.

　　简单句，整体理解为主系表结构，worth 在这里是形容词，按照介词的用法，后面接名词、代词等，故 be worth doing 中，worth 作表语，因为该词较为特殊，后面跟一个动名词作宾语.

5. The French authorities had the plane and moved…

　　简单句，主谓宾 + 宾补. 这里 had 是 have 的过去式，是有实际意义的，不是助动词.

　　[关键句型] 本课复习 have 的用法，此处为使役动词，have + 名词/代词 + 过去分词，不必交待具体的动作执行人是谁，但我们知道是让别人去做的，而不是自己，比如 have <u>my hair</u> <cut>. 就是让外人帮自己理发，不是自己剪头发.

6. a group of enthusiasts are going to have the plane restored.

　　简单句，主谓宾 + 宾补结构，am/is/are going to do 在这里是一般将来时.

7. It has engines, but the group will need to have…

　　并列句，but 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构；后句也是主谓宾结构，动词不定式短语作宾语，本身也可以额外分析：~~to~~ have <u>only three of them</u> <rebuilt>.

8. Imagine their surprise and delight when they broke open the packing cases and found that…

　　复合句，主句是祈使句，直接省略了主语，谓语 + 宾语，后面则是 when 引导的时间状语从句，该从句为并列复合句，由 and 连接这个时间状语从句，前句为主谓宾结构，后句为 found + that 引导的宾语从句，该宾语从句是主系表结构.

9. A colony of bees had turned the engine and it was preserved.

　　并列句，前句为主谓宾结构；后句为主谓结构.

Lesson 67 Volcanoes 火山

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Haroun Tazieff, {the Polish scientist}, has spent his lifetime [studying active volcanoes and deep caves] (in all parts of the world).[1] [In 1948], he went [to Lake Kivu] (in the Congo) [to observe a new volcano] (which he [later] named <Kituro>.)[2] Tazieff was able to set up his camp [very close to the volcano] [while it was erupting [violently].][3] [Though he managed to take a number of brilliant photographs,] he could [not] stay [near the volcano] [for very long].[4] He noticed that a river (of liquid rock) was coming [towards him].[5] It threatened to surround him [completely], but Tazieff managed to escape [just in time].[6] He waited [until the volcano became quiet] and he was able to return [two days later].[7] [This time], he managed to climb into the mouth of Kituro [so that he could take photographs and measure temperatures.][8] Tazieff has [often] risked his life [in this way].[9] He has been able to tell us more about active volcanoes [than any man] (alive).[10]

波兰科学家哈罗恩·塔捷耶夫花了毕生的精力来研究世界各地的活火山和深洞。[1] 1948 年他去了刚果的基伍湖,对一座后来被他命名为基图罗的新火山进行观察。[2] 当火山正在猛烈地喷发时,塔捷耶夫有办法在离火山非常近的地方扎营。[3] 尽管他设法拍了一些十分精彩的照片,但他却不能在火山附近停留太长的时间。[4] 他发现有一股岩浆正向他流过来,[5] 眼看就要将他团团围住,但塔捷耶夫还是设法及时逃离了。[6] 他等到火山停止喷发,两天以后又返回去。[7] 这次他设法爬进了基图罗火山口,以便能拍摄照片和测试温度。[8] 塔捷耶夫经常冒这样的生命危险。[9] 他能告诉我们的有关活火山的情况比任何在世的人都要多。[10]

1. Haroun Tazieff has spent his lifetime…

简单句，主谓宾结构.

2. he went… which he named Kituro.

复合句，主句主谓结构，后面有一个 which 引导的定语从句，为主谓宾 + 宾补结构，which 在从句中作宾语，后面的名字为宾语补足语，还原为 he named it Kituro.

3. Tazieff was able to set up his camp while it was erupting…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面是 while 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构.

[关键句型] 复习 be able to do 的用法.

4. Though he managed to take…, he could stay.

复合句，主句主谓结构，从句是 thought 引导的让步状语从句，主谓宾结构.

[关键句型] managed to 可以像 was able to 这样来表示一个成功地完成了的动作.

5. He noticed that a river was coming…

复合句，主句主谓 + that 引导的宾语从句结构，从句为主谓结构.

6. It threatened to surround him, but Tazieff managed to escape.

并列句，but 连接前后两句，均为主谓宾结构，动词不定式短语作宾语.

7. He waited until the volcano became quiet and he was able to return…

并列复合句，and 连接前后两句，前句为复合句，主句主谓结构，从句是 until 引导的时间状语从句，主系表结构；后句为简单句，主谓结构.

8. he managed to climb so that…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，又一次使用了 managed to do 句型，后面是 so that 引导的目的状语从句，是一个并列句，and 连接前后两句，均为主谓宾结构.

9. Tazieff has risked his life.

简单句，主谓宾结构，现在完成时.

10. He has been able to tell us more.

简单句，主谓宾结构，tell 后面接双宾语.

Lesson 68 Persistent 纠缠不休

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[1]I crossed the street [to avoid meeting him], but he saw me and came [running towards me].[1] It was no use pretending that I had [not] seen him, so I waved [to him].[2] I [never] enjoy meeting Nigel Dykes.[3] He [never] has anything <to do>.[4] [No matter how busy you are,] he [always] insists on coming with you.[5] I had to think of a way (of preventing him from following me around all morning).[6]

[2]'Hello, Nigel,' I said.[7] 'Fancy meeting you [here]!'[8]

[3]'Hi, Elizabeth,' Nigel answered.[9] 'I was [just] wondering how to spend the morning — [until I saw you.][10] You're [not] busy [doing anything], are you?'[11]

[4]'No, not at all,' I answered.[12] 'I'm going to…'[13]

[5]'Would you mind my coming with you?' he asked, [before I had finished speaking.][14]

[6]'Not at all,' I lied, 'but I'm going [to the dentist].'[15]

[7]'[Then] I'll come [with you],' he answered.[16] 'There's [always] plenty (to read) [in the waiting room]!'[17]

[1]我穿过马路以便避开他，但他看到我并朝我跑过来。[1]若再装作没看见他已是没有用了，我只好向他招手。[2]我就怕遇到奈杰尔·戴克斯[3]。他从来都是无事可做，[4]不管你多忙，他总是坚持要跟你去。[5]我得想办法不让他整个上午缠着我。[6]

[2]"你好，奈杰尔，[7]想不到在这儿见到你。"我说。[8]

[3]"你好，伊丽莎白，"奈杰尔回答说，[9]"我正不知道怎么消磨这一上午呢，正好见到好。[10]你不忙，是吗？"[11]

[4]"不，不忙，[12]我打算去……"[13]我回答。[12]

[5]"我跟你一道去行吗？"没等我说完话他就问道。[14]

[6]"没关系，但我准备去牙医那里。"我说了个谎。[15]

[7]"那我也跟你去，[16]候诊室里总有很多东西可供阅读！"[17]他回答。[16]

1. I crossed the street, but he saw me and came…

并列句，but 连接前后两句，前句为简单句，主谓宾结构；后句为并列句，主谓宾结构和主谓结构，running towards me 为现在分词短语作方式状语.

[关键句型] 目的状语中，to avoid doing 这里，本身是动词不定式短语，我们在状语中额外拆分来看，存在动宾结构，去掉 to 之后，avoid sth.，这里的 doing 便是避免的对象，动名词作宾语.

2. It was no use pretending…, so I waved…

并列句，so 作连词，so 的前句为复合句，it 为形式主语，pretending…是真正的主语，该主语中有一个 that 引导的从句作 pretend 的宾语，这个属于额外细分；后句为主谓结构.

[关键句型] pretending 为动名词作主语.

3. I enjoy meeting Nigel Dykes.

简单句，主谓宾结构，动名词作宾语.

4. He has anything to do.

简单句，主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

5. No matter how busy you are, he insists on coming…

复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，动名词作宾语，句首是让步状语从句，主系表结构.

6. I had to think of a way…

简单句，主谓宾结构，本句的后置定语比较长.

8. Fancy meeting you…

简单句，本句是无主句，fancy 在这里是动词，used to show that you are surprised or shocked by sth （表示惊奇或震惊）真想不到，竟然，所以这里的动名词作宾语.

10. I was wondering how to…until I saw you.

复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，其中 how 引导短语作宾语，后面 until 引导了时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

11. You're not busy, are you?

主句是主系表结构的简单句，后面的 are you 让本句成为了反义疑问句.

14. Would you mind my coming with you before I had finished speaking.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面的 before 引导时间状语从句，为主谓宾结构，动名词 speaking 作宾语.

15. I'm going…

简单句，本句的 I am going to 后面不是接动词原型，而是 to 作介词，所以这里实际上谓语是 am going，现在进行时，而不是 be going to do 的一般将来时.

Lesson 69 But not murder! 并非谋杀！

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

I was being tested [for a driving licence] [for the third time].¹ I had been asked <to drive> [in heavy traffic] and had done so [successfully].² [After having been instructed to drive out of town], I began to acquire confidence.³ Sure that I had passed, I was [almost] beginning to enjoy my test.⁴ The examiner must have been pleased [with my performance], for he smiled and said, '^Just one more thing^, Mr. Eames.⁵ Let us <suppose> that a child [suddenly] crosses the road [in front of you].⁶ [As soon as I tap [on the window],] you must stop [within five feet].'⁷ I continued driving and [after some time], the examiner tapped [loudly].⁸ [Though the sound could be heard [clearly],] it took me a long time to react.⁹ I [suddenly] pressed the brake pedal [hard] and we were {both} thrown [forward].¹⁰ The examiner looked at me [sadly].¹¹ 'Mr. Eames,' he said, [in a mournful voice], 'you have [just] killed that child!'¹²

我第 3 次接受驾驶执照考试。¹按照要求在车辆拥挤的路上驾驶，我圆满地完成了。²在接到把车开出城的指令后，我开始有了信心。³确信我已通过考试，所以我几乎开始喜欢起这次考试。⁴主考官对我的驾驶想必是满意的，因为他微笑着说："埃姆斯先生，只剩 1 项了。⁵让我们假设一个小孩子突然在你前面穿过马路。⁶我一敲车窗，你必须在 5 英尺之内停车。"⁷我继续往前开着，过了一会儿，主考官大声地敲了起来。⁸虽然声音听得很清楚，但我过了好一会儿才作出反应。⁹我突然用力踩紧刹车踏板，结果我俩的身体都向前冲去。¹⁰主考官伤心地看着我。¹¹"埃姆斯先生，"他以悲伤的语气说，"你刚刚把那个小孩压死了！"¹²

1. I was being tested…

简单句，主谓结构，被动语态.

[关键句型] 本课复习被动语态，考驾照，路考，是被测试，一般过去时，所以是 was being tested，这里的 being 就是被动语态的标识.

2. I had been asked to drive and had done so.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构，被动语态；后句为省略了主语的主谓宾结构，so 在这里作宾语，完成了这些，而不是作状语.

[关键句型] 被动语态 be asked，这里是过去完成时，所以是 had been asked.

3. After…, I began to acquire.

简单句，主谓宾结构，动词不定式作宾语. 本句的句首为 after 介词短语作状语，只不过正好在这个状语之中，包含了一个被动语态的结构，我们予以细分.

4. Sure that I had passed, I was beginning to enjoy…

复合句，主句为主谓宾结构；本句的前句在语法上可以理解为状语从句，这样一来可以用逗号连接，sure that 这里是 that 引导的从句作宾语，这个从句为主谓结构，但是 sure 是省略了 being,或者省略了 I was，不过如果是 I was sure…就是一个完整的句子，后面逗号要加一个连词，比如 so.

5. The examiner must have been pleased, for he smiled and said…

并列句，for 为并列连词，前句为主谓结构，must have been done，表很有把握的推测；后句为主谓结构.

6. Let us suppose that a child crosses the road…

复合句，主句为祈使句，谓宾 + 宾补，后面是 that 引导的宾语从句，在语法上作动词 suppose 的宾语，该从句为主谓宾结构.

7. As soon as I tap, you must stop…

复合句，主句主谓结构，前面为时间状语从句，也是主谓结构.

8. I continued driving and…, the examiner tapped…

并列句，这里是 and 连接前后两句，不是逗号，前句为主谓宾结构；你可以把后句看成 and 的后面为一个时间状语，然后是主干的主谓结构.

9. Though the sound could be heard, it took me a long time to react.

复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，it 为形式主语，动词不定式为真正主语，而 though 为让步状语从句，主谓结构，用了被动语态，被听见.

10. I pressed the brake pedal and we were thrown.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构，后句为主谓结构.

11. The examiner looked at me.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

12. you have killed that child!

简单句，主谓宾结构，现在完成时.

Lesson 70 Red for danger 危险的红色

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[During a bullfight], a drunk [suddenly] wandered [into the middle] (of the ring).[1] The crowd began to shout, but the drunk was unaware of the danger.[2] The bull was busy [with the matador] [at the time], but it [suddenly] caught sight of the drunk (who was shouting (rude) remarks and waving a (red) cap.)[3] [Apparently sensitive to criticism], the bull forgot all (about the matador) and charged at the drunk.[4] The crowd [suddenly] grew quiet.[5] The drunk, [however], seemed [quite] sure of himself.[6] [When the bull got close [to him],] he [clumsily] stepped aside [to let it pass].[7] The crowd broke into cheers and the drunk bowed.[8] [By this time], [however], three men had come into the ring and they [quickly] dragged the drunk [to safety].[9] [Even] the bull seemed to feel sorry for him, for it looked on [sympathetically] [until the drunk was out of the way [before once more turning its attention to the matador].][10]

在一次斗牛期间，一个醉汉突然溜达到斗牛场的中间。[1]人们开始大叫起来，但醉汉却没有意识到危险。[2]当时那公牛正忙于对付斗牛士，但突然牛看见了醉汉，只见醉汉正大声说着粗鲁的话，手里挥动着一顶红帽子。[3]对挑衅显然非常敏感的公牛完全撇开斗牛士，直奔醉汉而来。[4]观众突然静了下来，[5]可这醉汉像是很有把握似的。[6]当公牛逼近他时，他踉跄地往旁边一闪，牛扑空了。[7]观众欢呼起来，醉汉向人们鞠躬致谢。[8]然而，此时已有 3 个人进入斗牛场，迅速把醉汉拉到安全的地方。[9]好像连牛也在为他感到抱歉，因为牛一直同情地看着醉汉，直到醉汉的背影消逝，才重新将注意力转向斗牛士。[10]

1. a drunk wandered…

简单句，主谓结构. 这里 drunk 是名词，酒鬼，醉汉，不过该词更常用作形容词，教材上的词汇注释只写该词在课文中的意思，并不全面.

2. The crowd began to shout, but the drunk was unaware of the danger.

并列句，but 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构；后句为主系表结构.

3. The bull was busy, but it caught sight of the drunk who…

并列复合句，but 连接前后两句，前句为简单句，主系表结构；后句为复合句，主

句为主谓宾结构，后面有一个 who 引导的定语从句，该定语从句是一个并列结构，and 连接两个句子，前句为主谓宾结构，用的是过去进行时，was shouting；而后句其实也是过去进行时，*was* waving a cap，句中单独一个 waving 按道理是不能作谓语的，于是你需要理解这里还有一个 was 因行文的简洁，在此省略了.

4. the bull forgot all and charged at the drunk.

并列句，前后两句由 and 连接，均为主谓宾结构. charge 一词在这里作动词猛冲之意，这个词还有别的更为常见的意思，比如充电，要价，控告等，务必查字典，把动词和名词的所有义项予以积累.

[学习提示] 不要我提出一个单词你才去查一次字典，要养成查字典的习惯，可以等学完了本书再进行复习的过程中，着重多查字典进行扩展和积累. 同样一本书，不同人学下来的收获大相径庭.

[关键句型] 复习与 for, with, of, to, at, from, in, on 和 about 等介词连用的词语，本处 charge at 即向什么猛冲，构成动词短语.

5. The crowd grew quiet.

简单句，主系表结构.

6. The drunk seemed sure of himself.

简单句，主系表结构.

7. When the bull got close, he stepped aside.

复合句，主句主谓结构，这里目的状语可以额外细分 to let it <pass>. 句首是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

8. The crowd broke into cheers and the drunk bowed.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句主谓宾结构；后句主谓结构.

9. three men had come into the ring and they dragged the drunk.

并列句，and 连接的前后两句均为主谓宾结构.

10. the bull seemed to feel sorry for him, for it looked on until the drunk was out of the way.

并列复合句，for 连接前后两句，前句为主系表结构，不定式动词短语作表语，可以额外细分 ~~to~~ feel sorry [for him]. 后一句为复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，后面跟了 until 引导的时间状语从句，主系表结构，最后有一个 before 引导的时间状语，不是从句，需要区分.

Lesson 71 A famous clock 一个著名的大钟

成长足迹：20＿＿年＿＿月＿＿日

[When you visit London,] one of the first things (you will see) is Big Ben, {the famous clock} (which can be heard [all over the world] [on the B.B.C(.).])[1] [If the Houses of Parliament had [not] been burned down [in 1834],] the great clock would [never] have been erected.[2] Big Ben takes its name [from Sir Benjamin Hall] (who was responsible [for the making] (of the clock) [[when] the new Houses of Parliament were being built.])[3] It is not only of immense size, but is [extremely] accurate [as well].[4] Officials (from Greenwich Observatory) have the clock <checked> [twice a day].[5] [On the B.B.C.] you can hear the clock [when it is [actually] striking] [because microphones are connected to the clock tower.][6] Big Ben has [rarely] gone wrong.[7] [Once], [however], it failed to give the correct time.[8] A painter (who had been working [on the tower]) hung a pot of paint [on one of the hands] and slowed it down![9]

当你游览伦敦时，首先看到的东西之一就是"大本"钟，即那座全世界都可以从英国广播公司的广播中听到它的声音的著名大钟。[1]如果不是国会大厦在 1834 年被焚毁的话，这座大钟永远也不会建造。[2]"大本"钟得名于本杰明·霍尔爵士，因为当建造新的国会大厦时，他负责建造大钟。[3]此钟不仅外型巨大，而且走时也非常准确。[4]格林尼治天文台的人员每天两次派人为此钟对时。[5]当大钟真的敲钟报时的时候，你可以从英国广播公司的广播中听到，因为钟塔上接了麦克风。[6]"大本"钟很少出差错。[7]然而有一次，它却把时间报错了。[8]在钟塔上工作的一位油漆工把一只油漆桶挂在了一根指针上，把钟弄慢了！[9]

1. When you visit London, one (that) you will see is Big Ben which can be heard…

复合句，主句是主系表结构，中间有一个定语从句修饰 things；句首是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构；最后是 which 引导的定语从句，主谓结构.

[关键句型] 本课为复习课，本句第一个定语从句 you will see. 复习第 60 课，表示将要发生的事情.

[语法符号讲解] 本句 BBC 采用了每一个字母均加 "." 的写法，写成了 B.B.C.，该词又正好在句末，这样句号和简写的点重合，为了表示 on the BBC 仅仅是状语而非

从句，我们在该状语的右括号"]"的前面额外补回了点号，把句号放在了外面.

2. If the Houses of Parliament had not been burned down, the great clock would have never been erected.

　　复合句，主句主谓结构，if 引导的条件状语从句也是主谓结构.

　　[关键句型] 复习第 64 课，虚拟语气的表达，本句为与过去情况相反的假设.

3. Big Ben takes its name… who was responsible when the new Houses of Parliament were being built.

　　复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面是 who 引导的定语从句，该从句为主系表结构，在定语从句中还含有一个 when 引导的时间状语从句，该从句为主谓结构.

　　[关键句型] 复习第 69 课，被动语态，were being built 被建造.

4. It is of immense size, but is accurate.

　　并列句，but 连接前后两句，均为主系表结构.

5. Officials have the clock checked.

　　简单句，主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

　　[关键句型] 复习第 66 课，have 的用法.

6. you can hear the clock when it is striking because…

　　复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，该从句为主谓结构，最后面是 because 引导的原因状语从句，主谓宾结构.

7. Big Ben has gone wrong.

　　简单句，主系表结构.

8. it failed to give the correct time.

　　简单句，主谓宾结构，动词不定式短语作宾语.

9. A painter who had been working… hung a pot of paint and slowed it down!

　　复合句，主句主谓宾结构，有两个并列的谓语 hung 和 slow down；中间有 who 引导的定语从句修饰主语，主谓结构.

　　[关键句型] 本句的定语从句复习第 62 课过去完成进行时，had been doing 形式.

Lesson 72 A car called bluebird "蓝鸟"火箭车

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

{The great racing driver}, Sir Malcolm Campbell, was the (first) man (to drive at over 300 miles per hour).[1] He set up a (new world) record [in September 1935] [at Bonneville Salt Flats, Utah].[2] *Bluebird*, {the car} (he was driving,) had been [specially] built [for him].[3] It was over 30 feet in length and had a (2,500-horsepower) engine.[4] [Although Campbell reached a speed (of over 304 miles per hour),] he had (great) difficulty (in controlling the car) [because a tyre burst [during the first run].][5] [After his attempt], Campbell was disappointed [to learn that his average speed had been 299 miles per hour].[6] [However], [a few days later], he was told that a mistake had been made.[7] His average speed had been 301 miles per hour.[8] [Since that time], racing drivers have reached speeds (over 600 miles an hour).[9] [Following in his father's footsteps] [many years later], {Sir Malcolm's son}, Donald, [also] set up a (world) record.[10] [Like his father], he was driving a car (called *Bluebird*).[11]

杰出的赛车手马尔科姆·坎贝尔爵士是第一个把车开上 300 英里每小时的人。[1]他于 1935 年 9 月在犹他州的邦纳维尔盐滩创造了一项新的世界纪录。[2]他驾驶的"蓝鸟"赛车是为他量身定制。[3]它的车身长 30 英尺，有一个 2,500 马力的发动机。[4]尽管坎贝尔达到了每小时超过 304 英里的速度,但他很难把赛车控制住，因为在首轮驾驶中爆了一只轮胎。[5]挑战结束后，坎贝尔非常失望地得知他的平均时速是 299 英里。[6]然而，几天之后，有人告诉他说弄错了。[7]他的平均时速实际是 301 英里。[8]从那以来，赛车手已达到每小时 600 英里的速度。[9]很多年之后，马尔科姆爵士的儿子唐纳德踏着父亲的足迹，也创造了一项世界纪录。[10]同他父亲一样，他也驾驶着一辆名叫"蓝鸟"的赛车。[11]

1. The driver was the first man…

简单句，主系表结构，Sir Malcolm Campbell(1885-1948) 是英国赛车手，他创造了陆地和水上的最快驾驶记录，尤其是其蓝鸟赛车在 1935 年 9 月 3 日的这次，创造了 300 英里时速的世界记录，从 youtube 上的视频资料可知，当时是专门为了创造世界记录而驾驶的，并非是在某项比赛中创造的，所以教材的翻译我们有所修改. 日本 Sarome 公司还以蓝鸟火箭车为原型，设计了蓝鸟火箭车打火机.

[学习提示] 我们学好英语，也要学会使用互联网工具，同样的关键词 Sir Malcolm Campbell，在百度和谷歌所搜索出来的结果大相径庭，百度居然是以新概念 2 的教材内容为主，而谷歌所搜出来的，不仅有人物介绍，当年的创纪录视频，还有很多纪念及评论文章.

2. He set up a record…

简单句，主谓宾结构.

3. Bluebird had been built.

复合句，主句主谓结构，是过去完成时的被动语态，这里的同位语后面跟了个省略了 that 的定语从句修饰 car，主谓结构.

4. It was over 30 feet and had an engine.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主系表结构；后句为省略了主语的主谓宾结构.

5. Although Campbell reached a speed, he had difficulty… because a tyre burst.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，句首为让步状语从句，主谓宾结构，后面还有一个 because 引导的原因状语从句，主谓结构.

6. Campbell was disappointed…

简单句，本句主干是主系表结构，不过后面的不定式短语作原因状语可以额外细分，~~to~~ learn <u>that</u> his average speed had been 299 miles per ho<u>ur.</u> 我们在文中已经额外划分了该定语从句的具体情况，主系表结构.

7. he was told that a mistake had been made.

复合句，主句主谓 + that 引导的宾语从句结构，宾语从句为主谓结构，用了过去完成时的被动语态，had been done.

8. His average speed had been 301 miles per hour.

简单句，主系表结构.

9. racing drivers have reached speeds.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

10. Donald set up a record.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

11. he was driving a car…

简单句，主谓宾结构，过去分词作后置定语修饰 car.

单元复习

本课为复习课，教材 P325 的 SD 难点栏目提供了复习例句，斜体为正确词汇.

1. <u>Hurry up</u> or <u>you</u> <u>will</u> *miss* <u>the train</u>. 快点，不然你要赶不上火车了.

2. <u>I'm</u> *expecting* <u>to receive a letter</u> [soon]. 我预计很快就会收到一封信.

3. <u>You</u> <u>should</u> *raise* <u>that picture</u> [a few inches]. 你应该把那幅画举高几英寸.

4. <u>I</u> <u>love</u> *lying* <u>in bed</u>. 我喜欢躺在床上.

5. <u>He</u> [always] *beats* <u>me</u> [at chess]. 他总是在象棋上赢我.

6. <u>Are</u> <u>you</u> [*quite*] <u>ready</u>? 你准备好了吗?

7. <u>I</u> <u>dislike</u> <u>getting up</u> [early], but <u>I</u> *am used to* <u>it</u> [now]. 我不喜欢早起，但我现在已经习惯了.

8. <u>People</u> [often] <u>come into</u> <u>our garden</u> and *pick* <u>flowers</u>. 人们经常到我们的花园里来摘花.

9. [Whenever <u>I</u> <u>buy</u> <u>anything</u> (new),] <u>my father</u> [always] <u>asks</u> <u>me</u> <u>the</u> *price*. 每当我买新东西的时候，我爸总是问我价格.

10. <u>That house</u> *cost* <u>a fortune</u> [to build]. 那座房子花了很多钱来建造.

11. <u>I</u> *value* <u>your advice</u> [a great deal]. 我非常重视你的建议.

12. <u>The oil level</u> (in the engine) <u>must be</u> *checked*. 必须检查发动机中的油量.

13. <u>I</u> <u>could</u> [not] *accept* <u>his offer</u>. 我不能接受他的提议.

14. <u>Who</u> <u>is going to</u> *dress up* [as Father Christmas]? 谁要装扮成圣诞老人?

15. (How) <u>many hours</u> [a day] <u>do</u> <u>you</u> *practice*? 你每天练习多少个小时?

16. <u>We</u> <u>were</u> *amused* [by his stories]. 我们被他的故事逗乐了.

17. <u>She</u> *hung* <u>the clothes</u> [on the line]. 她把衣服挂在了晾衣绳上.

18. <u>The train</u> <u>arrived</u> [*late*] [as usual]. 火车像往常一样晚点到达.

19. <u>He</u> <u>has been working</u> [too *hard*]. 他一直在努力工作.

20. <u>He</u> <u>was</u> [*nearly*] <u>run over</u> [by a car]. 他差点被车撞倒.

Unit 3 Special Lesson 第 3 单元特别课文
The last and longest journey 最后且最长之旅

成长足迹：20＿＿年＿＿月＿＿日

[学习提示] 本文讲述了一艘潜艇完成使命之后即将被销毁的故事. 文章回顾了该潜艇的光辉往事，为最终沉入深海所传达出来的伤感之情做了铺垫. 全文主要使用过去时态，但也有现在时态和将来时态，需要留意.

[Even] <u>ships</u> <u>grow</u> <u>old</u> and <u>have to be destroyed</u>.[1] <u>The (last) journey</u> (of a ship), (which <u>people</u> <u>have worked in</u> and <u>grown</u> [to love],) <u>is</u> [always] <u>a (sad) occasion</u>.[2] The *F.S. 949* <u>had not been</u> a (great) <u>liner</u>, or [even] <u>a (remarkable merchant) ship</u>.[3] <u>She</u> <u>was</u> <u>a U-boat</u> and <u>had sunk</u> <u>more ships</u> [during the war] [than any other submarine].[4] [In one famous battle], <u>she</u> <u>had sunk</u> <u>six ships</u> [in twenty-four hours].[5] [Alone], <u>she</u> <u>had gone out</u> [to meet a convoy] (of merchant ships).[6] [Though <u>these ships</u> <u>were protected</u> [by destroyers],] the *F.S.949* <u>had sunk</u> <u>four of them</u> [before <u>she</u> <u>was located</u>.][7] [During the long battle] (<u>that</u> <u>followed</u>,) <u>two</u> (of the destroyers) <u>were sunk</u> and <u>the little submarine</u> <u>was</u> [only] [slightly] <u>damaged</u>.[8] [Now], [under a cold, grey sky], <u>people</u> <u>were watching</u> [silently] [as <u>she</u> <u>came</u> [into the harbour].][9] <u>She</u> <u>would</u> [soon] <u>make</u> <u>her last journey</u> [out] [to sea] [before resting for ever in the depths] (<u>she</u> <u>knew</u> [so] [well].)[10] [1]

就连船舶也有老旧的一天，难逃销毁.[1]一艘船的最后一次航行，总是伤感的事情.[2]人们在这艘船上工作过，也热爱过.[2]F.S.949 号不是一艘大邮轮，甚至连一艘有名的商船都算不上.[3]她其实是一艘 U 潜艇，战争期间，击沉了多艘敌舰，首屈一指.[4]在一场著名的战役中，她在一天之内击沉了六艘战舰.[5]她有次单独行动，直面一队商船.[6]尽管这些商船由驱逐舰护航，F.S.949 号在自己位置暴露之前，击沉了其中 4 艘商船.[7]在紧接着的漫长战役中，两艘驱逐舰被击沉，而这艘小潜艇仅有轻微战损.[8]现在，在一个寒冷而灰蒙蒙的天气下，人们默默地注视着她驶入港湾.[9]她即将迎来她的最后一次航程，驶向大海，在她熟知的深海，永远安眠.[10]

1. ships grow old and have to be destroyed.

并列句，and 连接的两句是并列关系，句首的 even 作让步状语有些迷惑性，这里

---

1 选自《新概念英语 2》，北京：外语教学与研究出版社 2019.7. 第 229 页.

并不是从句. 前句主系表结构, 说哪怕是船只也会变得老旧, 后一句则是省略了主语的主谓结构, 这里是被动语态, 不得不面临销毁的命运了.

2. The journey is an occasion.

复合句, 主句是主系表结构, 这中间穿插了一个 which 引导的非限制性定语从句, 是并列结构, 都是主谓宾结构. is 在这里体现出一般现在时.

3. The F.S. 949 had not been a liner, or a ship.

并列句, 两句均为主系表结构, or 连接了两个表语, 可以理解为后面这句省略了主系部分.

4. She was a U-boat and had sunk more ships.

并列句, and 连接前后两句, 前句为主系表结构, 后句为省略了主语的主谓宾结构, 这里谓语动词是 sink, to damage a boat or ship so that it goes below the surface of the sea, etc. 使下沉; 使沉没. 本句 she 指代潜艇为拟人化表达, 以表亲切.

5. she had sunk six ships.

简单句, 主谓宾结构, 再次使用 sink 表达击沉船只.

6. she had gone out…

简单句, 主谓结构, 后面动词不定式短语作目的状语.

7. Though ships were protected, the F.S.949 had sunk four before she was located.

复合句, 本句主句为主谓宾结构, 前后各一个状语从句, 前句是 though 引导的让步状语从句, 主谓结构, 用了被动语态, 被保护; 后句为 before 引导的时间状语从句, 也是被动语态, 被定位, 在翻译时按照中文表达习惯, 写为位置暴露.

8. two were sunk and the submarine was damaged.

并列句, and 连接前后两句, 前句句首的状语中, 有一个定语从句, 主谓结构, 前句本身也是主谓结构; 后句为主谓结构, 一般过去时的被动语态, 被损伤了.

9. people were watching as she came…

复合句, 主句主谓结构, 后面是 as 引导的时间状语从句, 主谓结构, 这里谓语我们只划分 come, 而 into the harbour 整个介词短语作为地点状语, 因为 come into 作动词词组的话, 是继承、充当…角色之意, 在这里不符合句意.

10. She would make her last journey.

简单句, 本句主干结构为主谓宾简单句, 后面的时间状语其实也可以视为一个从句, before she rests…即可, 这个时间状语里面有一个定语从句, 我们予以划分, 主谓结构. 主句使用了将来时态, 即将开始最后的旅程.

Unit Four (Lesson 73-96) 第 *4* 单元（第 *73-96* 课）坚持不懈，绝不满足！
　　欢迎语　扎实学习就已经是速成了

吴应时 2022 年 3 月 27 日

　　这是一个浮躁的时代吗？到处都是一天背几百上千个单词的人，到处都是一年读上千本书的营销号，到处都是裸考高分的经验分享，这些资讯能不让人浮躁吗？又或许只不过是资讯传播更为便利，我们得以了解别人，尤其是更多的普通人的生活，于是给我们带来了同辈压力，带来了焦虑。

　　个人经验，从社会科学研究方法的角度来看，其实价值是不高的。社会科学对学习方法所对应的效果，是需要进行控制变量研究的。设置对照组，排除掉干扰因素，尤其是区别相关性和因果性。某些花了非常多时间学英语的人所总结出来的英语学习方法，很可能方法并不理想，但因为他投入在英语学习的时间上很多，故而形成了方法有效的错觉。不过从另一个角度来说，在英语学习的道路上，即便是不太有效的方法，却也能产生进步，这就是语言学习的特点所在。因为只要智力正常，没有聋哑，每个人都可以学会自己当地的语言，可以沟通和交流。语言就像是大脑的一个操作系统，属于基础设施，这就注定门槛不能太高，但要精进就不容易了。

　　学习方法说来说去就是那么回事，相信学到这里的你也慢慢感觉出来了，哪有什么速成，一个单词、一句话、一篇文章地扎实学习，让每一天都有对应的收获和进步。如果你看了几分钟短视频应用上的英语视频，发现某种方法很好，那多半是被误导了。英语有一定的规律可循，但也因为语言的复杂性，很多规律都有例外。越是宣传起来简单易懂的，越不靠谱。尤其是号称"秒懂"的，一定要倍加小心，被骗钱还是小事，**养成了找捷径的心态，对未来几十年的人生抉择都贻害无穷。**平心而论，本书的语法符号体系至少在分析句子成分上还是很方便实用的，能起到这一个作用，我就很知足了。

　　不要相信任何新奇的学习方法，也尽量少看并不科学的经验分享，你有没有考虑过这样一个问题，其实很多人学英语的方法是完全一样的，不同的是执行能力或者是投入的时间，也就是说，完全是靠着自己的学习习惯和勤奋才能学好，而不是大家一样的多听多背的学习方法。甚至连学习材料都是一样的，我相信很多人拿到这本书会觉得如获至宝，每一句都认真学懂，反复读背；但也有些人就简单翻看，学不了几课便放弃了。90%的人估计连学完前面三个单元都坚持不下来。如果你已经学到这里了，那么请给自己一句鼓励。

　　这一级的课文长度进一步提升，但所有的句型结构都是复习前面的了，故而我就不额外标记关键句型的语法点了。教材中的关键句型也只是提及对应前面多少课，没有额外的例句讲解。最后一个单元了，我相信你一定可以坚持下去，要知道，还有《应时新概念英语 3》和《应时新概念英语 4》我都已经准备好了，就等你披荆斩棘之后，开启新的篇章。◇

Lesson 73 The record-holder 纪录保持者

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Children (who play truant [from school]) are unimaginative.[1] (A quiet day's) fishing, or eight hours in a cinema [seeing the same film] [over and over again], is [usually] [as far as] they get.[2] They have {all} been put to shame [by a boy] (who, [while playing truant], travelled 1,600 miles.)[3] He hitchhiked [to Dover] and, [towards evening], went [into a boat] [to find somewhere] (to sleep).[4] [When he woke up [next morning],] he discovered that the boat had, [in the meantime], travelled [to Calais].[5] No one noticed the boy [as he crept off.][6] [From there], he hitchhiked [to Paris] [in a lorry].[7] The driver gave him a few biscuits and a cup of coffee and left him [just] [outside the city].[8] The next car (the boy stopped) did [not] take him [into the centre] (of Paris) [as he hoped it would,] but [to Perpignan] (on the French-Spanish border).[9] [There] he was picked up [by a policeman] and sent [back] [to England] [by the local authorities].[10] He has [surely] set up a record [for the thousands of children] (who dream of evading school.)[11]

孩子们逃学在外缺乏想像力。[1]他们通常也就是去安静地钓上一天鱼，或在去电影院里一遍遍地看同一部电影打发八小时。[2]而有那么一个小男孩，他在逃学期间旅行了 1,600 英里，从而使得别的逃学的孩子们跟他相比都小巫见大巫了。[3]他搭便车到了多佛，天快黑时钻进了一条船，想找个地方睡觉。[4]第二天早上他醒来时，发现船在这段时间已经到了加来[5]。当男孩从船里爬出来时，谁也没有发现他。[6]从那里他又搭上卡车到了巴黎。[7]司机给了他几块饼干和一杯咖啡，就让他在城外下车了。[8]男孩截住的下一辆车，没有像他希望的那样把他带到巴黎市中心，而是把他带到了法国和西班牙边界上的佩皮尼昂。[9]他在那儿被一个警察抓住了，之后被当局送回了英国。[10]他无疑为成千上万梦想逃避上学的孩子们创造了一项纪录。[11]

1. Children who play truant are unimaginative.

复合句，主句为主系表结构，其中包含一个 who 引导的定语从句修饰 children，教材认为 truant 在此为名词，逃学的孩子，但在本句中，应作动词解，与 play 一起构成动词短语作谓语. 教材翻译不理想，此处并非是这些孩子缺乏想象力，结合下文可

知，是孩子们逃学之后的活动毫无新意.

2. fishing, or eight hours in a cinema is they get.

其实 is 前面一整个部分都可以视作主语，只不过主语带有一些定语和状语作为修饰成分，即便删去也不影响钓鱼和去电影院这两个逃学活动.

they get 在这里作表语从句，they get 已经是完整的主谓句子了.

3. They have been put to shame… who travelled 1,600 miles.

复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，who 引导的定语从句修饰 a boy，该定语从句也为主谓宾结构. 定语从句中，现在分词短语作状语，可转为状语从句：[while <u>he was playing truant</u>].

教材的翻译使用了"相形见绌"这一成语，有误，对比好的品格等内容时才能用该成语，此处是逃学的活动安排，不合适. 想做好英汉翻译，英语水平当然要过关，可中文水平也不能拖后腿.

4. He hitchhiked…and, went…

并列句，均为主谓结构，后一句省略了主语. 动词不定式短语 to find somewhere 本身，somewhere 可以看作是 find 的宾语，后面一个动词不定式 to sleep 作定语来修饰这个 somewhere 就更容易理解.

5. When…, he discovered that the boat had travelled.

复合句，一开始是 when 引导的时间状语从句，该从句为主谓结构；接着是主句，主谓 + 宾语从句，that 引导的从句作 discover 的宾语. 该宾语从句为主谓结构.

[语法符号讲解]在 that 前一个空格就开始画横线，到"th"下，表示这是宾语从句的开始，在最后一个单词 Calais 的"lais."下画横线，点句号也要画上，表示宾语从句的结束.

6. No one noticed the boy as he crept off.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，as 引导的时间状语从句为主谓结构.

8. The driver gave him sth. and left him.

并列句，两句都是主谓宾结构，以第二个 and 连接. 第一句为 give 接双宾语结构，其中 sth.物为直接宾语，相当于给了什么东西，所以这个东西是直接的宾语，而这个东西给了 sb.人，这个拿到该物的人是间接宾语.

9. The next car (that) the boy stopped did take him as he hoped it would.

复合句，本句为本篇最为复杂的句子. the boy stopped 是主谓结构的定语从句，省略了 that，修饰 car；而主句是主谓宾结构，该句包含介词短语作地点状语 into the centre of Paris，后跟一个 as 引导的方式状语从句，as he hoped it would，而该从句中，又包含

一个宾语从句作为 hope 的宾语，该宾语从句为省略句，仅 it would 两个词，还原为[as he hoped that it would take him [into the centre of Paris].]

11. He has set up a record…who…

  复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，后面有一个 who 引导的定语从句修饰 children，该从句为主谓宾结构.

Lesson 74 Out of the limelight 舞台之外

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[1]An ancient bus stopped [by a dry river bed] and a party of famous actors and actresses got off.[1] [Dressed in dark glasses and old clothes], they had taken (special) precautions [so that no one should recognize them.][2] But (as they [soon] discovered,) disguises can [sometimes] be too perfect.[3]

[2]"This is a wonderful place (for a picnic)," said Gloria Gleam.[4]

[3]"It couldn't be better, ^Gloria^," Brinksley Meers agreed.[5] "No newspaper men, no film fans! Why don't we come [more often]?"[6]

[1]一辆老爷巴士停在一条干涸的河床边，一群著名男女演员下了车。[1]他们戴着墨镜，穿着旧衣裳，特别小心以防别人认出他们。[2]但他们很快就发觉，化装的效果有时过分完美了。[3]

[2]"在这个地方野餐简直太妙了，"格洛里亚·格利姆说。[4]

[3]"是再好不过的了，格洛里亚。"布林克斯利·米尔斯表示同意，[5]"没有记者，没有影迷！我们为什么不经常来这里呢？"[6]

（*To be continued* 未完待续）

1. An ancient bus stopped and a party of famous actors and actresses got off.

并列句，and 连接，两个句子都是主谓结构. a party of，一群. 演员这个词是有性别之分的，需要留意.

2. they had taken precautions so that no one should recognize them.

复合句，句首是过去分词作状语，表明这群演员的打扮情况，然后主句为主谓宾结构，表示其非常小心谨慎，后接一个 so that 引导的目的状语从句，为主谓宾结构.

3. as they discovered, disguises can be perfect.

复合句，主句为主系表结构，句首是一个 as 引导的定语从句，修饰整个句子，类似于 as we all know 这种表达. 其中 4-5 句为主系表结构，略.

6. don't we come…

反问句，主谓结构.

[4][Meanwhile], two other actors, {Rockwall Slinger and Merlin Greeves}, had carried two large food baskets [to a shady spot] (under some trees).[1] [When

[4]"此时，另外两位演员，罗克沃尔·斯林格和默林·格里夫斯，已经把两个大食品篮子提到了一片树阴下。[1]当他们都已安顿舒

179

they <u>had</u> {all} <u>made</u> <u>themselves</u> <<u>comfortable</u>>,] <u>a stranger</u> <u>appeared</u>.[2] <u>He</u> <u>looked</u> <u>very</u> <u>angry</u>.[3] "[Now] <u>you</u> <u>get out of</u> <u>here</u>, {all of you}!" <u>he</u> <u>shouted</u>.[4] "<u>I'm</u> <u>sheriff</u> [here]. <u>Do</u> <u>you</u> <u>see</u> <u>that notice</u>? <u>It</u> <u>says</u> '<u>No Camping</u>' – [in case <u>you</u> <u>can't</u> <u>read</u>!]"[5]

[5]"Look, sheriff," <u>said</u> <u>Rockwall</u>, "<u>don't</u> <u>be</u> <u>too hard</u> [on us]. <u>I'm Rockwall</u> <u>Slinger</u> and <u>this</u> <u>is</u> <u>Merlin Greeves</u>."[6]

[6]"^Oh^, <u>is</u> <u>it</u>?" <u>said</u> <u>the sheriff</u> [with a sneer].[7] "^Well^, <u>I'm Brinksley Meers</u>, and <u>my other name</u> <u>is</u> <u>Gloria Gleam</u>.[8] [Now] <u>you</u> <u>get out of</u> <u>here</u> [fast]!"[9]

适后，一个陌生人出现了。[2]他看上去怒气冲冲。[3]"你们都从这里走开，全都走开！"[4]他大叫着，"我是这里的警长。你们看到那个告示牌了吗？上面写着'禁止野营'——除非你们不识字！"[5]

[5]"警长，您看这样怎么样，"罗克沃尔说，"请您高抬贵手。我是罗克沃尔·斯林格，这位是默林·格里夫斯。"[6]

[6]"噢，是吗？"警长冷笑一声说道[7]，"这么说来，我还是布林克斯利·米尔斯呢。[8]我还是格洛里亚·格利姆呢。[8]现在你们赶快滚吧！"[9]

1. two other actors had carried two baskets.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

2. When they had made themselves comfortable, a stranger appeared.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，前面是一个 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾 + 宾语结构.

4. you get out of here.

简单句，这里的谓语是动词短语构成. 后面 all of you 是 you 的同位语，理解成主语即可代入 All of you get out of here.

5. …in case you can't read!

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面是 in case 引导的条件状语从句. 本句也可以按照实际对话的情况翻译成"你要是不识字，我念给你听——禁止野营".

6. don't be too hard…

简单句，主系表结构，这里 be hard on sb…指对某人严格要求，文中则是对明星严格执法，一视同仁，而明星显然觉得自己能有特权，于是表明身份.

8. I'm Brinksley Meers, and my other name is Gloria Gleam.

并列句，两句都是主系表结构，这两句的意思很明显就是警长并不接纳明星们的真实身份，正如第一段所说，他们化装得太"完美"了，外人还真是无法认出来这是

大明星，也正因此，警长才反呛说，自己也是大明星，少啰嗦，赶紧滚，不然就要开罚单了．所以本句的翻译就按照我们的对话习惯进行了翻译，以便理解，否则按照教材上的译法，我还有一个名字叫格洛里亚，让人摸不着头脑．

　　需要留意，本文中的人名均为虚构，谷歌上搜索的结果几乎全是新概念英语 2 的课文，但是我们在理解的时候，完全可以代入你熟悉的明星，如果有个人跟你说他是王源，你可能也会反呛说"那我还是易烊千玺呢，要么就是王俊凯"，是不是就是这个情况了？

9. you get out of here.

　　简单句，这句同句 4 一样，但翻译不同，本句多了个程度状语 fast，说明警长已经不耐烦了，故教材在翻译中用了比较粗俗的口语表达，以示态度的细微变化．

Lesson 75 SOS 呼救信号

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[When (a light passenger) plane flew off course [some time ago],] it crashed [in the mountains] and its pilot was killed.[1] The only passengers, {a young woman and her two baby daughters}, were unhurt.[2] It was the middle of winter.[3] Snow lay thick [on the ground].[4] The woman knew that (the nearest) village was miles away.[5] [When it grew dark,] she turned a suitcase [into a bed] and put the children [inside it], [covering them with all the clothes (she could find).)[6] [During the night], it got [terribly] cold.[7] The woman kept as near [as she could [to the children]] and [even] tried to get into the case {herself}, but it was too small.[8] [Early next morning], she heard planes <passing overhead> and wondered how she could send a signal.[9] [Then] she had an idea.[10] She stamped out the letters {'SOS'} [in the snow].[11] [Fortunately], a pilot saw the signal and sent a message [by radio] [to the nearest town].[12] It was not long [before a helicopter arrived [on the scene] [to rescue the survivors (of the plane crash)].][13]

不久前，一架轻型客机偏离了航线，在山区坠毁，飞行员丧生。[1] 一位年轻的女人和她的两个女婴，作为机上仅有的乘客，没有受伤。[2] 此时正值隆冬季节[3]，地上积着厚厚的雪。[4] 这位女人知道，最近的村庄少说也有数英里远。[5] 天黑下来的时候，她把手提箱当作床，把两个孩子放了进去，又把所有能找到的衣服都盖在了孩子们身上。[6] 夜里，天冷得厉害。[7] 这位妇女尽可能地靠近孩子，甚至自己也想钻进箱子里去，只是箱子太小了。[8] 第二天一大早，她听到头顶上有飞机飞过，但不知道怎样才能发送信号。[9] 后来她有了一个主意。[10] 她在雪地上踩出了"SOS"这3个字母。[11] 幸运得很，一位飞行员看到这个信号，用无线电给最近的城镇发了消息。[12] 没过多久，一架直升飞机飞抵飞机失事现场，来搭救这几位幸存者。[13]

1. When a plane flew off course, it crashed and its pilot was killed.

并列复合句，and 连接两个句子，首句为复合句，主句为主谓结构，when 引导的时间状语从句为主谓宾结构，其中 flew off 为动词短语作谓语. 后句为主谓结构.

2. The passengers were unhurt.

简单句，主系表结构，这里 unhurt 是形容词，所以作表语，而不是像上一句 was killed 一起做谓语.

4. Snow lay thick.

简单句，主系表结构，这里 lay 是系动词，后面的形容词 thick 作表语.

5. The woman knew that the village was miles away.

复合句，主谓 ＋ 宾语从句，该宾语从句为主系表结构.

6. When it grew dark, she turned a suitcase and put the children…

并列复合句，主句为 and 连接两个谓语的并列句，均为主谓宾结构，前句有 when 引导的时间状语从句，该从句为主系表结构. 最后是现在分词短语作状语，只不过这个状语之中包括了一个 she could find 的定语从句修饰 clothes，这个从句属于成分之中的，此处额外予以划分.

8. The woman kept as near as she could and tried to get into the case, but it was too small.

并列复合句，整个句子第一层为 but 连接的两个句子. 第二层则是 but 前面的句子，分为 and 连接两个谓语的并列句，第一句为主系表结构，这里面有一个 as 引导的状语从句，主谓结构；而第二句则是省略了主语的句子，tried 作谓语，动词不定式短语作宾语.

最后是 but 后面的句子，主系表结构.

9. she heard planes passing overhead and wondered how she could send a signal.

并列复合句，and 连接两个句子，前句为主谓宾 ＋ 宾补；后句为省略了主语的谓语 ＋ 宾语从句结构，宾语从句为主谓宾结构.

11. She stamped out the letters…

简单句，主谓宾结构，这里 stamp 作动词，和 out 一起构成动词词组，要多查字典.

12. a pilot saw the signal and sent a message…

并列句，均为主谓宾结构.

13. It was not long before a helicopter arrived…

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是 before 引导的时间状语从句，to rescue 动词不定式短语为目的状语，并非从句，该状语比较长，为了便于大家的理解，我们额外多划分了一个定语，用来修饰 the survivors，供参考.

Lesson 76 April Fools' Day 愚人节

成长足迹：20＿＿年＿＿月＿＿日

'[To end our special news bulletin],' said the voice (of the television announcer), 'we're going over [to the macaroni fields] (of Calabria).[1] Macaroni has been grown [in this area] [for over six hundred years].[2] Two of the leading growers, {Giuseppe Moldova and Riccardo Brabante}, tell me that they have been expecting a (splendid) crop [this year] and harvesting has begun [earlier] [than usual].[3] [Here] you can see two workers (who, ^between them^, have just finished cutting three cartloads (of golden brown macaroni stalks).)[4] The (whole) village has been working [day and night] [gathering and threshing this year's crop] [before the September rains].[5] [On the right], you can see Mrs. Brabante {herself}.[6] She has been helping her husband [for thirty years now].[7] Mrs. Brabante is talking [to the manager] (of the local factory) ([where] the crop is processed.)[8] This last scene shows you what will happen [at the end of the harvest]: {the famous Calabrian macaroni-eating competition}![9] Signor Fratelli, {the present champion}, has won it [every year] [since 1991].[10] And that ends (our special) bulletin (for today), {Thursday, April 1 st}.[11] We're [now] going back [to the studio].'[12]

"作为我们特别新闻简报的结尾，"电视广播员说，"我们现在到卡拉布里亚的通心粉田里。[1]通心粉在这个地区的耕种已有 600 多年。[2]两个种植大户，朱塞皮·莫尔道瓦和里卡多·布拉班特告诉我，他们一直期待着今年获得一个大丰收，收割工作比往年开始得要早些。[3]这里您可以看到两个工人，他们合作割下了 3 车金黄色的通心粉秸。[4]全村的人都日夜奋战，要赶在 9 月的雨季之前把今年的通心粉收割上来，并完成通心粉从秸梗上的脱离工作。[5]在画面右侧，您可以看到布拉班特太太本人，[6]她已经帮了她的丈夫 30 年了。[7]布拉班特太太现在正和负责通心粉加工的当地加工厂的经理交谈。[8]这最后一个镜头向您展示了收获之后将发生的事情：著名的卡拉布里亚人吃通心粉大赛！[9]目前的冠军弗拉特里先生，自 1991 年以来，一直蝉联冠军。[10]今天—4 月 1 日，星期四—的专题新闻节目到此结束。[11]现在我们回到电视演播室。"[12]

1. we're going over…

简单句，主谓结构. 句子最开始是一个目的状语. bulletin 是简报的意思，bullet 是子弹的意思，可以顺便积累词汇. 全文都是新闻播报的内容，这一段小内容也就是一个简报了. 为了愚人节的效果，整段新闻都是编造的，说通心粉大家可能没感觉，换个说法，比如告诉你，我们目前来到了面条田里，是不是感觉就出来了？

2. Macaroni has been grown…

简单句，主谓结构，这里是被动语态，通心粉被种植在田地里，那么翻译时可以用主动语态，在此耕种即可.

3. Two of the leading growers tell me that they have been expecting a crop and harvesting has begun…

复合句，主句为主谓宾 + 宾语从句，tell 接双宾语，后面 that 引导的宾语从句为并列句，两句一起构成这个宾语从句，都是大户们所讲的内容. 本句 leading growers 直接按中文习惯以耕种大户表达即可，翻译成主要种植者则意味着还有次要种植者，明显不合理.

4. you can see two workers who have just finished cutting three cartloads.

复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，后面有一个 who 引导的定语从句，为主谓宾结构. 定语从句中，有一个小的插入语，额外解释了一下是两人通力合作，between 在此处为介词，意思是 by putting together the efforts or actions of two or more people or groups. 这里 stalk 本来指庄稼那种稻穗之类的梗秸，可其实不存在结通心粉的梗秸，只能硬编了.

5. The village has been working…

简单句，主谓结构，before the September rains 是时间状语，这里不能理解为从句，比如误以为 the September rains[本处划分为错误示范]，这里 rains 是名词，指雨季，这里的时间状语在本质上是 before sth. 根据牛津词典：the rains [*pl.*复数] the season of heavy continuous rain in tropical countries（热带地区的）雨季，例：The rains come [in September]. 雨季九月份开始.

教材中的翻译又写成把庄稼收割上来，上句说了，没有这样的庄稼，所以我们在翻译时还是要继续强调是收割通心粉，而不是庄稼.

8. Mrs. Brabante is talking… where the crop is processed.

复合句，主句主谓结构，后面是一个 where 引导的定语从句，修饰工厂，表明是在这里进行加工的.

9. This last scene shows you what will happen.

复合句，主句主谓宾 + 宾语从句结构，后面是 what 引导的宾语从句，在该从句中 what 本身作从句的主语.

10. Signor Fratelli has won it.

简单句，主谓宾结构，后面有一个 since 1991 作时间状语，自 1991 年以来一直如此.

11. that ends our bulletin.

简单句，主谓宾结构，这里 end 作动词用，使结束.

Lesson 77 A successful operation 一次成功的手术

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

The mummy (of an Egyptian woman) (who died [in 800 B.C.]) has [just] had an operation.[1] The mummy is that (of Shepenmut) (who was [once] a singer (in the Temple of Thebes).)[2] [As there were (strange) marks (on the X-ray plates) (taken of the mummy),] doctors have been trying to find out whether the woman died of a (rare) disease.[3] The (only) way (to do this) was to operate.[4] The operation, (which lasted [for over four hours],) proved to be [very] difficult [because of the hard resin] (which covered the skin.)[5] The doctors removed a section of the mummy and sent it [to a laboratory].[6] They [also] found something (which the X-ray plates did not show:) {a small wax figure of the god Duamutef}.[7] This god (which has the head of a cow) was [normally] placed [inside a mummy].[8] The doctors have not [yet] decided how the woman died.[9] They feared that the mummy would fall [to pieces] [when they cut it <open>,] but [fortunately] this has not happened.[10] The mummy [successfully] survived the operation.[11]

死于公元前 800 年的一位埃及妇女的木乃伊刚刚接受了一次手术。[1]这是曾在底比斯神殿里当过歌手的赛潘姆特的木乃伊。[2]由于在给这个木乃伊拍摄的 X 光片子上有点奇怪的斑点，所以，医生们一直试图搞清这位妇女是否死于一种罕见的疾病。[3]搞清的唯一办法就是手术。[4]手术持续了 4 个多小时，非常难做，因为皮肤上覆盖着一层硬硬的树脂。[5]医生们从木乃伊身上取下一个切片，送去实验室。[6]他们还发现了 X 光片所没有显示的东西：一个蜡制的杜瓦木特夫神小塑像。[7]这种有着牛头的神像通常被放在木乃伊体内。[8]医生们至今还未确定这位妇女的死因。[9]他们曾担心在把木乃伊切开后，它会散成碎片，但幸运得很，这种情况并未发生。[10]这具木乃伊成功地经受了这次手术。[11]

1. The mummy has had an operation.

　　复合句，主句主谓宾结构，里面有一个 who 引导的定语从句修饰 mummy，是的，妈咪这个单词，也是木乃伊的意思.

2. The mummy is that who was a singer…

复合句，主句为主系表结构，后面有一个 who 引导的定语从句，也是主系表结构. Shepenmut 是人名，也就是这个木乃伊是以这个人的遗体制作的.

3. As there were marks, doctors have been trying to find out whether the woman died of a disease.

复合句，as 引导的时间状语从句，为 there be 句型，而主句为主谓宾结构，宾语为动词不定式短语构成，后面还跟了个 whether 引导的从句作 find out 的介词宾语，该宾语从句为主谓宾结构.

5. The operation, which lasted…, proved to be difficult…

复合句，主句为主系表结构，即 the operation proved to be difficult，这中间插入了一个非限制性定语从句，由 which 引导，修饰 operation，补充说明了该手术持续的时间情况. 最后是 because 短语作原因状语，这里面又额外有一个 which 引导的定语从句来修饰 resin.

6. The doctors removed a section of the mummy and sent it…

并列句，均为主谓宾结构，这里 to laboratory 是送去了实验室，教材用了意译，直接写了送去化验.

7. They found something which the X-ray plates did not show…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，find 的过去式为 found.

后面有一个 which 引导的定语从句修饰 something，而引导词 which 在该从句中作宾语，也就是后面的具体内容，这些内容作 which 的同位语.

8. This god which… was placed…

复合句，主句为主谓结构，被动语态，被放置在木乃伊体内；which 引导的定语从句则修饰 god 的具体特点，有一个牛头.

9. The doctors have decided how the woman died.

复合句，主句主谓结构，how 引导的从句作 decided 的宾语，这个宾语从句也是主谓结构.

10. They feared that the mummy would fall when they cut it open, but this has not happened.

并列复合句，but 连接两个句子，前句的主句为主谓 + 宾语从句结构，而宾语从句是主谓结构，在宾语从句之中，又有一个 when 引导的时间状语从句，为主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

but 的后句为主谓结构.

11. The mummy survived the operation.

　　简单句，主谓宾结构，这里 survive 不能理解为存活了，毕竟木乃伊早就没有生命了，故而是成功经受住了这次手术检查.

Lesson 78 The last one? 最后一根烟吗？

[After reading an article (entitled 'Cigarette Smoking and Your Health')] I lit a cigarette [to calm my nerves].[1] I smoked [with concentration and pleasure] [as I was sure that this would be (my last) cigarette.][2] [For a whole week] I did not smoke [at all] and [during this time], my wife suffered [terribly].[3] I had all the (usual) symptoms (of someone giving up smoking): {a bad temper and an enormous appetite}.[4] My friends kept on offering me cigarettes and cigars.[5] They made no effort [to hide their amusement] [whenever I produced a packet of sweets [from my pocket].][6] [After seven days of this] I went [to a party].[7] Everybody (around me) was smoking and I felt [extremely] uncomfortable.[8] [When (my old) friend {Brian} urged me <to accept a cigarette>,] it was more [than I could bear.][9] I took one [guiltily], lit it and smoked [with satisfaction].[10] My wife was delighted that things had returned [to normal] [once more].[11] [Anyway], (as Brian pointed out,) it is the (easiest) thing (in the world) to give up smoking.[12] He {himself} has done it [lots of times]![13]

读完一篇题为《吸烟与您的健康》的文章之后，我点上了一根烟压压惊。[1]我聚精会神而又愉快地抽着这根烟。[2]因为我确信这是我最后一根烟了。[2]整整一个星期我根本没有吸烟。[3]在此期间，我妻子吃尽了苦头。[3]戒烟人士的所有通常的戒断症状我全都有：脾气暴躁和食欲旺盛。[4]我的朋友们不断地向我递香烟和雪茄。[5]每当我从口袋里掏出一包糖果时，他们都毫不掩饰地表现出他们对此感到非常好笑。[6]这样过了7天以后，我去参加一次聚会。[7]我周围的每个人都在吸烟，我感到非常不自在。[8]当我的老朋友布赖恩极力劝我接受一根香烟时，我再也忍不住了。[9]我内疚地接过一根烟点上，心满意足地抽了起来。[10]一切又都恢复了正常，为此我妻子十分高兴。[11]不管怎么说，正如布赖恩所指，戒烟是世界上最容易的事情。[12]他自己就戒了很多次烟了！[13]

1. I lit a cigarette…

    简单句，主谓宾结构，句首是一个 after 所带的时间状语，这个状语比较长，里面提到了一篇文章，有一个后置定语予以修饰. calm my nerves 就是压压惊的意思，教材

直译也没问题，新概念课文的这个梗，现在还经常在网上看到烟民在吸烟有害的报道下留言，"吓得我赶紧点根烟压压惊".

2. I smoked… as I was sure that this would be my cigarette.

复合句，主句为主谓结构，后面有一个 as 引导的原因状语从句，该从句中又包含一个宾语从句，均为主谓宾结构.

3. I did not smoke… and my wife suffered.

并列句，均为主谓结构.

4. I had all the symptoms…

简单句，主谓宾结构，这里的定语 of someone giving up smoking 有一个独立主格结构的情况，就是 someone giving up smoking，这个结构的主语是 someone，跟主句的主语 I 不同，但因为这又不是一个完整的定语从句，所以我们将其作为独立主格结构，具体定义请翻看语法书，高中语法书里面就有了. 此处可以改为定语从句 someone (<u>who</u> <u>gives up</u> <u>smoking</u>.)

5. My friends kept on offering A B.

简单句，主谓宾结构，offer 后面接双宾语，把 B 提供给了 A.

6. They made no effort whenever I produced a packet of sweets…

复合句，主句主谓结构，后面有一个 whenever 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

本句的动词 produce 一般的意思是生产，但这里是拿出来，这种基础单词一定要好好查一次词典，把每一个义项都弄清楚. produce sth (from/out of sth): to show sth or make sth appear from somewhere 出示；展现；使出现.

7. I went.

简单句，主谓结构.

8. Everybody was smoking and I felt uncomfortable.

并列句，and 前句为主谓结构，后句为主系表结构.

9. When my friend urged me to accept a cigarette, it was more than I could bear.

复合句，主句为主系表结构，前面有一个 when 引导的时间状语从句，为主谓宾 + 宾补结构，后面是一个比较状语从句，为主谓结构.

10. I took one, lit it and smoked.

并列句，三个句子并列，在时间关系上递进发展，从接了根烟，到点烟，再到吸烟，一个句子全表达到了.

11. My wife was delighted that things had returned.

复合句，主句为主系表结构，后面是 that 引导的宾语从句，为主谓结构.

12. as Brian pointed out, it is the thing to give up smoking.

    复合句，主句为 it 作形式主语，后面 to give up 动词不定式作真正的主语. 本句前面是 as 引导的定语从句，as 是关系代词作宾语.

13. He has done it.

    简单句，主谓宾结构，用了现在完成时.

Lesson 79 By air 坐飞机

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

I used to travel [by air] [a great deal] [when I was a boy.]¹ My parents used to live [in South America] and I used to fly [there] [from Europe] [in the holidays].² A (flight) attendant would take charge of me and I [never] had an (unpleasant) experience.³ I am used to travelling [by air] and [only] [on one occasion] have I [ever] felt frightened.⁴ [After taking off], we were flying [low] [over the city] and [slowly] gaining height, [when the plane [suddenly] turned round and flew back [to the airport].]⁵ [While we were waiting to land,] a (flight) attendant told us <to keep calm> and <to get off the plane> [quietly] [as soon as it had touched down.]⁶ Everybody (on board) was worried and we were curious [to find out what had happened].⁷ [Later] we learnt that there was a (very important) person [on board].⁸ The police had been told that a bomb had been planted [on the plane].⁹ [After we had landed,] the plane was searched [thoroughly].¹⁰ [Fortunately], nothing was found and [five hours later] we were able to take off [again].¹¹

我在幼年的时候，曾多次乘飞机旅行。¹ 我的父母曾经住在南美洲，所以假期里我常从欧洲乘飞机到他们那里。² 我总是由一位空中乘务员照管，从未遇到过不愉快的经历。³ 我习惯了乘飞机旅行，只是有一次把我吓坏了。⁴ 起飞之后，我们在城市上空低低地飞行，然后慢慢爬高。⁵ 这时飞机突然调转头来，飞回了机场。⁵ 在我们等待降落时，一位空中乘务员告诉我们要保持镇静，待飞机一着陆，就马上不声不响地离开飞机。⁶ 飞机上的人都很担心，我们都急于想知道究竟出了什么事。⁷ 后来我们才得知，飞机上坐了一位非常重要的人物。⁸ 有人报警说飞机上安放了一枚炸弹。⁹ 我们降落之后，彻底检查了一遍飞机。¹⁰ 好在什么也没有找到。¹¹5 个小时后，我们又起飞了。¹¹

1. I used to travel when I was a boy.

复合句，主句主谓结构，后面有一个时间状语从句，为主系表结构.

2. My parents used to live and I used to fly…

并列句，and 连接前后两句，都是主谓结构. 本文多次出现 be used to + doing sth. 表示习惯了做某事，这里 used 发 use 音，d 不需要发音.

3. An attendant would take charge of me and I had an experience.

并列句，and 连接两句，均为主谓宾结构. 一般来说 take charge of 指掌管，负责，这里是自己被空姐暂时监护.

4. I am used to travelling and have I felt frightened.

并列句，and 连接两句，前句为主谓宾结构，后句为倒装，把 have 提前了，还原的话是 I have only felt frightened.

5. we were flying and gaining height, when the plane turned round and flew back…

并列复合句，主句为 and 连接的并列句，均为主谓结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，也是一个并列句.

6. While we were waiting to land, an attendant told us to… as soon as it had touched down.

复合句，主句为主谓宾 + 宾补结构，这里宾语补足语有两个. 句首是一个 while 引导的时间状语从句，为主谓宾结构，后面有一个 as soon as 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构.

7. Everybody was worried and we were curious…

并列句，均为主系表结构，请注意，最后的 to find…happened 本身是一个目的状语，只不过该状语之中有一个 what 引导的从句作 find out 的宾语，我们予以额外标记.

8. we learnt that…

复合句，主句主谓 + that 引导的宾语从句结构，句中的 very important person 就是我们常说的 VIP.

9. The police had been told that…

复合句，主句主谓 + that 引导的宾语从句结构，且为被动语态，被告知，但是一般而言，报警是主动的行为，所以翻译时可以转换为主动语态，有人报警即可.

plant 此处作动词，to place sth. or yourself firmly in a particular place or position 立稳；竖立；安放. 这类小词一定一定要查字典，把名词词性的所有义项和动词词性的所有义项都彻底搞懂.

10. After we had landed, the plane was searched…

复合句，主句主谓结构，前面是一个 after 引导的时间状语从句，为主谓结构.

11. nothing was found and we were able to take off…

并列句，and 连接的前后两句都是主谓结构.

Lesson 80 The Crystal Palace 水晶宫

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[Perhaps] the (most extraordinary) building (of the nineteenth century) was the Crystal Palace, (which was built [in Hyde Park] [for the Great Exhibition] (of 1851).)[1] The Crystal Palace was different [from all other buildings] [in the world], for it was made [of iron and glass].[2] It was one of the biggest buildings (of all time) and a lot of people (from many countries) came [to see it].[3] A great many goods were sent [to the exhibition] [from various parts] (of the world).[4] There was [also] a (great deal of) machinery (on display).[5] The (most wonderful piece of) machinery (on show) was Nasmyth's steam hammer.[6] [Though [in those days], traveling was not as easy [as it is [today],]] steam boats carried thousands of visitors (across the Channel from Europe).[7] [On arriving in England], they were taken [to the Crystal Palace] [by train].[8] There were six million visitors [in all], and the profits (from the exhibition) were used to build museums and colleges.[9] [Later], the Crystal Palace was moved [to South London].[10] It remained one of the most famous buildings [in the world] [until it was burnt down [in 1936].][11]

19 世纪最不寻常的建筑也许要数水晶宫了，它是为 1851 年的"伟大的博览会"而建在海德公园的。[1] 这座水晶宫不同于世界上所有的其他建筑，因为它是用钢铁和玻璃建成的。[2] 它是有史以来最高大的建筑物之一，因此，人们从各个国家纷纷前来参观。[3] 大量的商品从世界各地运送到了博览会，[4] 参展的还有很多机器，[5] 其中最奇妙的是内史密斯的蒸汽锤。[6] 尽管在当时旅行不像现在这么容易，但汽船还是把成千上万的参观者从欧洲大陆送过了英吉利海峡。[7] 一到英国，火车就把他们送到了水晶宫。[8] 总共有 600 万人参观。[9] 博览会的赢利用来建造博物馆和高等学校。[9] 后来，"水晶宫"被移到了伦敦南部。[10] 在 1936 年被焚毁之前，它一直是世界上最著名的建筑物之一。[11]

1. the building was the Crystal Palace, which was built…

复合句，主句主系表结构，which 引导的定语从句为主谓结构. 这次博览会是世界上第一次大的展会，当时在英国举办，定名为 the Great Exhibition，这个 great 正是 Great Britain 的 great，后面的世界博览会则是 World Exposition.

2. The Crystal Palace was different, for it was made…

并列句，for 作并列连词，连接前后两句，前句为主系表结构；后句为主谓结构，这里 iron 是钢铁的意思，如果想表达纯钢的，可以用 steel.

3. It was one of the biggest buildings and a lot of people came…

并列句，and 连接两句，前句为主系表结构，后句为主谓结构.

5. There was a machinery…

There be 句型.

7. Though traveling was not as easy as it is, steam boats carried thousands of visitors.

复合句，本句主句为主谓宾结构，句首是 though 引导的让步状语从句，这个从句中又含有一个 as 引导的方式状语从句.

本句中的 steam boats 最好写成 steamboats，在语法上，steam 相当于是 boat 的定语，名词作定语不如形容词来作，所以合起来写会更正式一些.

8. they were taken…

简单句，主谓结构，句首是一个状语，介宾短语构成.

9. There were six million visitors, and the profits were used to build museums and colleges.

并列句，and 连接，前句为 there be 句型，and 后面是主谓宾结构. 这里的 profits 属于会计词汇，是扣除了成本 cost 之后的盈利，需要予以区别的是 revenue，这个是所有的收入，包括门票、租金、广告等收入，这些收入扣除了运营成本、人员成本等之后，所剩下的才是 profits.

11. It remained one of the most famous buildings until it was burnt down.

复合句，主句为主系表结构，后面有一个 until 所引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构.

Lesson 81 Escape 脱逃

[学习提示] 本文应理解为对一个舞台剧情节的描写，其中战俘"杀死"了守卫并换上了守卫的制服，以及打倒司机的情节，均为表演需要，没有人在本文中受到伤害，快来学习如何把这个故事讲好吧.

[When he had killed the guard,] the prisoner (of war) [quickly] dragged him [into the bushes].¹ [Working rapidly in the darkness], he [soon] changed [into the dead man's clothes].² [Now], [dressed in a blue uniform and with a rifle over his shoulder], the prisoner marched [boldly] [up and down] [in front of the camp].³ He could hear shouting (in the camp) {itself}.⁴ Lights were blazing and men were running [here and there]: they had [just] discovered that a prisoner had escaped.⁵ [At that moment], a (large black) car (with four officers inside it), stopped [at the camp gates].⁶ The officers got out and the prisoner stood to attention and saluted [as they passed.]⁷ [When they had gone,] the driver (of the car) came [towards him].⁸ The man [obviously] wanted to talk.⁹ He was [rather] elderly [with grey hair and clear blue eyes].¹⁰ The prisoner felt sorry [for him], but there was nothing else (he could do.)¹¹ [As the man came [near,] the prisoner knocked him [to the ground] [with a sharp blow].¹² [Then], [jumping into the car], he drove off [as quickly] [as he could.]¹³

那个战俘杀死了卫兵以后，迅速地把尸体拖进了灌木丛。¹ 战俘在黑暗中忙活了一阵儿，赶紧换上了死去的卫兵的衣服。² 现在战俘身穿蓝军装，肩扛步枪，在军营门前大胆地来回走着。³ 他听得见军营里面的喧闹声。⁴ 那里灯火通明，人们在东奔西跑：他们刚刚发现有一个俘虏逃跑了。⁵ 正在此时，一辆黑色大轿车在军营门口停了下来。里面坐了4 个军官。⁶ 军官们下了车，战俘立正站好，并在军官从他面前经过时敬了礼。⁷ 军官走后，汽车司机向他走来，⁸ 这人显然是想过来聊天。⁹ 他上了年纪，有着白头发和明亮的蓝眼睛。¹⁰ 战俘为他感到抱歉，但却没有别的选择。¹¹ 当这个人走近时，战俘一拳把他打倒在地，¹² 然后跳进车里，以最快的速度把车开走了。¹³

1. When he had killed the guard, the prisoner dragged him…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，从句是 when 引导的时间状语从句，本句在翻译的处理

上要留意代词的具体指向，从句中的 he 指主句的 the prisoner，而主句的 him 又是从句的 the guard，所以我们在翻译时干脆直接把代词的具体意思写出来，避免用他、他的，容易引起混淆.

2. he changed…

简单句，主谓结构，同样的，本句也需要处理翻译的指向，句中 the dead man 指的是上一句被杀的守卫，目前文章只交代了守卫死了，所以在翻译时直接写换上了死去的卫兵的衣服即可.

3. the prisoner marched…

简单句，主谓结构，句首是一个状语，交待换上的军装和装备情况.

4. He could hear shouting…

简单句，主谓宾结构，itself 是 the camp 的同位语，表示强调，就是从营地里面传出来的声音，就是他上一秒还以囚徒身份被囚禁在的营地，现在却即将获得自由，这个 itself 便把这个紧张感凸显了出来.

5. Lights were blazing and men were running…: they had discovered that a prisoner had escaped.

并列复合句，本句以冒号分为前后两个独立的句子，冒号前是一个并列句，有两个过去进行时的句子，均为主谓结构；而冒号后则是进一步解释说明为什么会把所有的探照灯都打开，以及营地的人们跑来跑去到处搜捕，因为有人逃脱了，这句话是主谓 + 宾语从句的结构，该从句为主谓结构.

6. a car stopped…

简单句，主谓结构，本句有一个 with 引导的介词短语作后置定语，说明车里坐了几个军官.

7. The officers got out and¹ the prisoner stood to attention and² saluted as they passed.

并列复合句，本句有两个 and，第一个 and¹ 为第一层，这个 and 前句将军官下车，后面讲战俘立正敬礼，而第二个 and² 就是连接战俘的立正和敬礼这两个动作，最后是一个 as 引导的时间状语从句，当他们经过的时候，主谓结构.

8. When they had gone, the driver came…

复合句，主句主谓结构，前面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，为主谓结构.

10. He was elderly.

简单句，主系表结构，这里 grey hair 就是白头发，没必要把灰色翻译出来，白头发就行了.

11. The prisoner felt sorry, but there was nothing else he could do.

并列复合句， but 连接了两个句子，前句为主系表结构，后句为 there be 句型，里面有一个 he could do 的定语从句，修饰 nothing else.

12. As the man came, the prisoner knocked him…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，as 引导的时间状语从句为主谓结构.

13. he drove off as quickly as he could.

复合句，主句主谓结构，句末是原级比较结构：as + adv. + as + 从句. 第一个 as 是副词，表程度，表示同样的，达到某个程度，修饰 quickly，这个 quickly 也是副词，修饰动词 drove off，说明开得有多快；第二个 as 是连词，是 in the way in which 照…方式的意思，后面是比较状语从句，主谓结构.

这里可以替换为 as quickly as possible，也就是简写的 ASAP.

Lesson 82 Monster or fish? 海怪还是大鱼？

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Fishermen and sailors [sometimes] claim to have seen monsters [in the sea].[1] [Though people have [often] laughed at stories (told by seamen),] it is [now] known that many of these 'monsters' (which have [at times] been sighted) are [simply] strange fish.[2] [Occasionally], (unusual) creatures are washed [to the shore], but they are [rarely] caught [out at sea].[3] [Some time ago], [however], a (peculiar) fish was caught [near Madagascar].[4] A (small fishing) boat was carried [miles out to sea] [by the powerful fish] [as it pulled on the line].[5] [Realizing that this was no ordinary fish], the fisherman made (every) effort [not] to damage it [in any way].[6] [When it was [eventually] brought [to shore],] it was found <to be over thirteen feet long>.[7] It had a head (like a horse), (big blue) eyes, (shining silver) skin, and a (bright red) tail.[8] The fish, (which has [since] been sent [to a museum] ([where] it is being examined [by a scientist],)) is called <an oarfish>.[9] Such creatures have [rarely] been seen <alive> [by man] [as they live [at a depth of six hundred feet].][10]

渔夫和水手们有时声称自己出海看到过海怪。[1]虽然人们常常对水手们讲的故事付诸一笑，但现在看来，人们有时看到的这些"怪物"很多不过是些奇怪的鱼。[2]一些不常见生物偶尔会被冲到岸上来，但它们在海上却极少能被捕到。[3]然而不久前，在马达加斯加附近的海里却捕到了一条奇怪的鱼。[4]强壮的大鱼咬着鱼线把一条小渔船拖到了几英里以外的海面上。[5]那位渔民意识到这根本不是一条普通的鱼，于是千方百计不让它受到丝毫伤害。[6]当终于把它弄上岸后，人们发现它身长超过了 13 英尺。[7]它长着一个像马一样的头，有着一双蓝色的大眼睛和闪闪发光的银色皮肤，还有一条鲜红色的尾巴。[8]此鱼叫桨鱼，被送进了博物馆，现正接受一位科学家的检查。[9]人们很少能看到活着的这类动物，因为它们生活在 600 英尺深的水下。[10]

1. Fishermen and sailors claim to have seen monsters…

简单句，主谓宾结构. 本文中 monster 是妖怪、怪物的意思，结合本文，我们可以直接翻译成海怪.

2. Though people have laughed at stories, it is known that many are strange fish.

复合句，本句的主干是 it is known that 所带的主语从句，在这个句子前面是 though 引导的让步状语从句，该从句为主谓宾结构.

it 是形式主语，that 引导的主语从句作真正主语，该主语从句为主系表结构.

在这个主语从句中含有一个 which 引导的定语从句，为主谓结构.

3. creatures are washed, but they are caught…

并列句，前句主谓结构，后句也是如此. 本句 unusual 可以翻译为"不常见的"，教材翻译成"异常的"，不准确，异常一般指某条鱼少了半边的鱼鳍这种异常的情况，文中并非指异常，而是平时很罕见的鱼.

caught 是 catch 的过去分词，而 catch out 虽然本身是一个词组，但在这里并不是这个意思，因为 catch out 是 to detect in error or wrongdoing，发现错误之意，在这里显然不合适，遇到不了解的词组，一定要查字典.

5. A boat was carried as it pulled on the line.

复合句，主句为主谓结构，后面是 as 引导的原因状语从句，为什么这艘小渔船会被拖这么远呢，就是因为大鱼在拉扯着鱼线，it 自然就是指这条大鱼了.

6. this was no ordinary fish, the fisherman made effort to damage it.

简单句，主谓宾结构，句首是现在分词短语作原因状语，该状语里面含有一个宾语从句，该从句为主系表结构，这里属于额外的划分.

7. When it was brought, it was found to be…

复合句,主句为主谓 + 主语补足语结构,句首是一个 when 引导的时间状语从句,主谓结构.

8. It had a head, eyes, skin, and a tail.

简单句，主谓宾结构，宾语有四个并列的名词.

这里顺便讲解一下英语中逗号的用法，一般来说，逗号可以连接并列意义的词语和短语，但是，逗号不能在没有连词的情况下，直接连接两个独立的句子. 比如，上一课（第 81 课）第 5 句，Lights were blazing and men were running here and there: they had just discovered that a prisoner had escaped. 本句的冒号如果改为逗号，则是病句. 可以改为"there, *and* they had…"，加了连词 and 就没问题。

9. The fish, which has been sent…where it is being examined…, is called an oarfish.

复合句，主句是主谓 + 主语补足语结构，中间穿插了 which 引导的定语从句，为主谓结构，该定语从句中还包含了一个 where 引导的定语从句修饰 museum，用了被动语态.

10. Such creatures have been seen alive as they live.

　　复合句，主句为主谓 + 主补，后面是 as 引导的原因状语从句，主谓结构.

Lesson 83 After the elections 大选之后

[1]The (former) Prime Minister, {Mr. Wentworth Lane}, was defeated [in the recent elections].[1] He is [now] retiring [from political life] and has gone [abroad].[2] My friend, {Patrick}, has [always] been a (fanatical) opponent (of Mr. Lane's Radical Progressive Party).[3] [After the elections], Patrick went [to the former Prime Minister's house].[4] [When he asked if Mr. Lane lived [there].] the policeman (on duty) told him that [since his defeat], the ex-Prime Minister had gone [abroad].[5] [On the following day], Patrick went [to the house] [again].[6] The (same) policeman was [just] walking [slowly] [past the entrance], [when Patrick asked the (same) question.][7] [Though [a little] suspicious [this time],] the policeman gave him the (same) answer.[8] [The day after], Patrick went [to the house] [once more] and asked [exactly] the (same) question.[9] [This time], the policeman lost his temper.[10] 'I told you [yesterday] and [the day before yesterday],'[11] he shouted, 'Mr. Lane was defeated [in the elections].[12] He has retired [from political life] and gone [to live abroad]!"[13]

[2]'I know,' answered Patrick, 'but I love to hear you say it!'[14]

[1]前首相温特沃兹·莱恩先生在最近的大选中落败。[1]他现已退出政坛，到国外去了。[2]我的朋友帕特里克一直是莱恩先生的激进党的强烈反对者。[3]大选结束后，帕特里克来到了前首相的住处。[4]当他询问莱恩先生是否住在那里时，值班的警察告诉他这位前首相落选后出国去了。[5]第二天，帕特里克再次来到首相的住处。[6]昨天的那位警察正从门口慢慢走过，帕特里克上前问了和昨天同样的问题。[7]虽然那位警察这次有点疑心，但还是对他作了同样的回答。[8]第三天，帕特里克又去了，提出了同前两天完全一样的问题。[9]这一次，警察脾气上来了。[10]"我昨天和前天都告诉过你了，"[11]他大叫，"莱恩先生在大选中落败了，[12]他已经退出政坛去国外了！"[13]

[2]"这些我都知道，"帕特里克说，"可我就是喜欢听你说出来！"[14]

1. The Prime Minister, was defeated.

简单句，主谓结构. 具体表达上是被动语态，被打败了，在本文中的意思则是在选

举中落败了. 选举这个单词 elections 为什么要使用复数，我们估计文中指的是英国的情况，英国的首相选举其实不是直接选举首相，而是以 General elections of the United Kingdom 大选的形式来进行，不同党派的议员参选，获得多数议席的政党的党魁出任首相，并组阁，所以这里的 elections 用了复数. 如果是谈论美国的总统选举 American presidential election，则无需使用复数.

2. He is retiring and has gone.

　　并列句，and 连接两句，均为主谓结构.

3. My friend has been an opponent.

　　简单句，主系表结构，这里 opponent 如果没有定语在前面修饰，冠词需要用 an.

5. When he asked if Mr. Lane lived, the policeman told him that the ex-Prime Minister had gone.

　　复合句，本句比较复杂，我们先看句首 when 引导的时间状语从句，这个从句是主谓结构，从句中还带有一个 if 引导的从句作 ask 的宾语，该宾语从句为主谓结构.

　　接下来我们看主句，主句是主谓宾 + 宾语从句结构，that 引导的宾语从句为主谓结构. 这里 ex-前缀为 "前…"，但 ex 本身也是名词，Someone's ex 某人的前任，前伴侣.

7. The policeman was walking, when Patrick asked the question.

　　复合句，主句为主谓结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

8. the policeman gave him the answer.

　　复合句，主句主谓 + 双宾语结构，逗号前面是 though 引导的让步状语从句，而且是省略了主语和谓语的情况，还原为：[Though <u>the policeman</u> <u>was</u> [a little] <u>suspicious</u> [this time],]…

9. Patrick went and asked the question.

　　并列句，and 前句为主谓结构，后句为省略了主语的主谓宾结构.

11. I told you.

　　简单句，本句主要注意昨天和前天的表达方式，必须熟悉.

13. He has retired and gone…

　　并列句，主句主谓结构，后句为省略了主语的主谓结构.

14. I love to hear…

　　简单句，主谓宾结构，宾语 to hear you say it 其实可以进一步细分 hear sb. (to) do sth.，所以是 ~~to~~ <u>hear</u> <u>you</u> <say it>.

Lesson 84 On strike 论罢工

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Busmen have decided to go on strike [next week].¹ The strike is due to begin [on Tuesday].² No one knows how [long] it will last.³ The busmen have stated that the strike will continue [until general agreement is reached (about pay and working conditions).]⁴ Most people believe that the strike will last [for at least a week].⁵ Many owners (of private cars) are going to offer 'free rides' [to people] [on their way to work].⁶ This will relieve pressure (on the trains) [to some extent].⁷ [Meanwhile], a number of university students have volunteered to drive buses [while the strike lasts.]⁸ All the students are (expert) drivers, but [before they drive any of the buses,] they will have to pass a (special) test.⁹ The students are going to take the test [in two days' time].¹⁰ [Even so], people are going to find it <difficult> to get to work.¹¹ But [so far], the public has expressed its gratitude (to the students) [in letters] (to the Press).¹² [Only] one or two people have objected that the students will drive [too fast]!¹³

公共汽车司机决定下星期罢工。¹罢工定于星期二开始，²谁也不知道会持续多久。³司机们声称此次罢工将一直持续到就工资和工作条件问题达成全面协议的时候为止。⁴多数人认为此次罢工至少会持续一个星期。⁵很多私人汽车的车主正准备为乘车上班的人们提供"免费乘车"的服务，⁶这将在某种程度上减轻对火车的压力。⁷与此同时，有一部分大学生自愿在罢工期间驾驶公共汽车。⁸所有的学生都是开车的能手，但在驾驶公共汽车之前，他们必须通过一项专门测验。⁹学生们准备在两天后就接受测验。¹⁰即使这样，人们仍会感到上班有困难。¹¹但到目前为止，公众已经向新闻界写信表达他们对学生们的感激之情了。¹²只有一两个人提出反对意见，说学生们会把车开得太快！¹³

1. Busmen have decided to go on strike.

简单句，主谓宾结构. go on strike 是固定搭配，表示举行罢工之意，在使用上，这里可以理解为 to go 不定式短语作宾语.

2. The strike is due to begin.

简单句，主系表结构. 这里 due 是 adj. due to do sth. means arranged or expected，所

以这里也是 to begin 不定式作定语，我们在理解上可以把 due 看作修饰 to begin.

3. No one knows how it will last.

复合句，主谓 + 宾语从句结构，that 引导的宾语从句也是主谓结构，单词 last 要专门查字典学习积累，这里是动词，to continue for a particular period of time 持续；继续；延续之意，因为本身就是持续进行的状态，故而在这个意思的情况下，不能用进行时.

4. The busmen have stated that the strike will continue until agreement is reached.

复合句，主句主谓 + 宾语从句结构，从句是 that 引导的宾语从句，主谓结构；该宾语从句中又包含了一个 until 引导的时间状语从句，该从句为主谓结构. about pay and working conditions 作定语修饰的是 agreement.

5. Most people believe that the strike will last.

复合句，主句主谓 + 宾语从句结构，该宾语从句为主谓结构.

6. Many owners are going to offer free rides.

简单句，主谓宾结构，动词短语 are going to offer 整体作谓语.

8. students have volunteered to drive buses while the strike lasts.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，不定式短语作宾语，~~to~~ drive <u>buses</u>，后面是 while 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构，本文多次复习 last 的用法.

9. students are drivers, but before they drive the buses, they will have to pass a test.

并列复合句，but 连接前后两句，前句为主系表结构，后句为复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，从句是 before 引导的时间状语从句，也是主谓宾结构.

11. people are going to find it difficult to get to work.

简单句，主谓宾 + 宾补的结构，it 是形式宾语，to get 动词不定式短语为实际的宾语.

12. the public has expressed its gratitude…

简单句，主谓宾结构，to the students 介词短语作后置定语，表示感谢是给谁的；然后又是一个 to the Press 作后置定语修饰 letter 是给谁的.

13. people have objected that the students will drive.

复合句，主句主谓 + 宾语从句，that 引导的宾语从句为主谓结构.

Lesson 85 Never too old to learn 活到老学到老

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

I have [just] received a letter (from my old school), (informing me that my former headmaster, {Mr. Stuart Page}, will be retiring [next week]).¹ Pupils of the school, {old and new}, will be sending him a present [to mark the occasion].² All those (who have contributed [towards the gift]) will sign their names [in a large album] (which will be sent [to the headmaster's home].)³ We shall {all} remember Mr. Page [for his patience and understanding] and [for the kindly encouragement (he gave us) [when we went [so unwillingly] [to school]].⁴ A great many former pupils will be attending a farewell dinner (in his honour) [next Thursday].⁵ It is a (curious) coincidence that [the day before his retirement], Mr. Page will have been teaching [for a total of forty years].⁶ [After he has retired,] he will devote himself [to gardening].⁷ [For him], this will be an (entirely new) hobby.⁸ But this does [not] matter, for, (as he has [often] remarked,) one is [never] too old to learn.⁹

我刚刚收到母校的一封信，通知我说以前的校长斯图亚特·佩琦先生下星期就退休了。¹为了纪念这个日子，学校的学生——无论老同学还是新同学——将一起送他一件礼物。²所有凑钱买此礼品的人都将自己的名字签在一本大签名簿上，签名簿将被送到校长的家里。³我们不会忘记佩琦先生对我们既有耐心又充满理解，也不会忘记在我们不愿去上学时他给予我们的亲切鼓励。⁴很多老同学都准备参加下星期四为他举行的告别宴会。⁵佩琦先生退休的前一天正好是他执教满40年的日子，这真是奇妙的巧合。⁶他退休后，将致力于园艺。⁷对于他来说，这将是一种全新的爱好。⁸但这没有关系，因为正如他常说的那样，人要活到老学到老。⁹

1. I have received a letter…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面 informing 所接的句子可以看作是现在分词作非限制性定语，informing = which informed，该分词短语的逻辑主语是 a letter. inform 后面所接为双宾语结构，所以 that 引导了一个宾语从句，该从句为主谓结构.

时态上需要留意将来进行时，will be retiring.

本句的 Page 我们为避免和动画片形象小猪佩奇使用同样的名字，特将奇改为琦.

2. Pupils of the school will be sending him a present…

简单句，主谓 + 双宾语结构，同样使用了将来进行时，will be sending.

3. All those who have contributed will sign their names…which will be sent.

复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，主句的主语 those 由一个 who 引导的定语从句修饰，该定语从句为主谓结构. 后面有一个 which 引导的定语从句修饰 album 签名簿，主谓宾结构，用了被动语态，被送去.

4. We shall remember Mr. Page.

本句的主句为简单句，主谓宾结构，但后面 for 引导的两个原因状语中，第二个原因状语里面包含了完整的句子，包括定语从句 he gave us，以及 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构.

[语法符号讲解] 本句第二个 for 引导的是一个原因状语，并非从句，故其第二个中括号 "].." 是在点句号里面的，而 when 引导的时间状语从句则需要把中括号标记在点句号外面，".]"，再加上 to school 地点状语的中括号，故而最后是 "]].]" 的标法.

5. A great many former pupils will be attending a farewell dinner…

简单句，主谓宾结构，同样使用了将来进行时，will be attending.

6. It is a coincidence that Mr. Page will have been teaching…

复合句，主句主系表结构，it 作形式主语，that 引导的主语从句作真正的主语，该从句为主谓结构，这里是将来完成进行时.

7. After he has retired, he will devote himself…

复合句，主句主谓结构，句首为时间状语从句，主谓结构.

9. this does matter, for, as he has remarked, one is too old to learn.

并列句，for 为并列连词，前句为主谓结构；后句为主系表结构，而在后句中，又有一个 as 引导的定语从句，修饰整个句子，为主谓宾结构.

Lesson 86 Out of control 失控

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[As the man tried to swing the speedboat round,] the steering wheel came away [in his hands].[1] He waved [desperately] [to his companion], (who had been water skiing [for the last fifteen minutes].)[2] Both men had [hardly] had time (to realize what was happening) [when they were thrown [violently] [into the sea.]][3] The speedboat had struck a buoy, but it continued to move [very quickly] [across the water].[4] Both men had [just] begun to swim [towards the shore], [when they noticed [with dismay] that the speedboat was moving [in a circle].][5] It [now] came [straight] [towards them] [at tremendous speed].[6] [In less than a minute], it roared [past them] [only a few feet away].[7] [After it had passed,] they swam on [as quickly] [as they could] [because they knew that the boat would [soon] return.][8] They had [just] had enough time (to swim out of danger) [when the boat [again] completed a circle.][9] [On this occasion], ^however^, it had slowed down [considerably].[10] The petrol had [nearly all] been used up.[11] [Before long], the noise dropped [completely] and the boat began to drift [gently] [across the water].[12]

当这人试图让快艇转弯时，方向盘脱手了。[1] 他绝望地向他的伙伴挥手，他的伙伴在过去的 15 分钟里一直在滑水。[2] 他们两个还没来得及意识到究竟发生了什么事情，就被猛地抛入了海里。[3] 快艇撞上了一个浮标，但它仍在水面上快速地行驶着。[4] 两个人刚准备向岸边游去，就惊愕地注意到快艇正在转着圈行驶。[5] 快艇现在正以惊人的速度向他们冲过来。[6] 不到 1 分钟的工夫，快艇从离他们只有几英尺远的地方呼啸着擦身过去。[7] 快艇过去之后，他们以最快的速度向前游去，因为他们知道快艇马上就要再转回来。[8] 他们刚刚勉强游出了危险区，快艇就又转完了一圈。[9] 然而这一次它的速度慢多了。[10] 汽油几乎已经耗尽。[11] 没过多久，噪音便彻底消失，快艇开始在水面上随波漂流。[12]

1. As the man tried to swing the speedboat round, the steering wheel came away…

复合句，主句主谓结构，动词词组 come away = to become detached 离开；脱开[1].

[1] 此处英语释义摘自《柯林斯英汉双解大词典》.

as 引导的时间状语从句为主谓宾结构.

2. He waved…who had been water skiing…

复合句，主句主谓结构，后面是 who 引导的定语从句，主谓结构，用了过去完成进行时 had been water skiing，需要留意.

3. Both men had had time to realize…when…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，这里 to realize 不定式作 time 的后置定语，这个不定式比较长，含有一个 what 引导的从句作 realize 的宾语，这个宾语从句为主谓结构. 本句用到了过去完成时，had + done 形式，只不过这里的动词是 have time 的 have，其过去分词正好也是 had，于是出现了 had had time.

之后有一个 when 引导的时间状语从句，为主谓结构.

第 38 课出现过 hardly 一词，这里再复习一词，几乎不，表示否定.

4. The speedboat had struck a buoy, but it continued to move.

并列句，but 连接前后两句，均为主谓宾结构.

5. Both men had begun to swim when they noticed that the speedboat was moving.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，该从句为主谓 + 宾语从句结构，属于从句里面包含从句，该宾语从句为主谓结构.

6. It came.

简单句，主谓结构.

7. it roared…

简单句，主谓结构，past 在这里是介词.

8. After it had passed, they swam on as they could because they knew that the boat would return.

复合句，本句结构较为复杂，主句是主谓结构，they swam on，as…as 结构，可以参考第 81 课的第 13 句，为比较状语从句.

句首有一个 after 引导的时间状语从句，为主谓结构，这里也用了过去完成时，had passed，需要留意.

最后是 because 引导的原因状语从句，为主谓 + that 引导的宾语从句，该从句为主谓结构.

9. They had had enough time when the boat completed a circle.

复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，也是主谓宾结构.

11. The petrol had been used up.

简单句，主谓结构，用了被动语态，被用尽了，all 在这里是副词，completely 之

意，作程度状语，跟 nearly 一起表示几乎完全的意思.

12. the noise dropped and the boat began to drift.

    并列句，and 连接两句，前句为主谓结构，后句为主谓宾结构.

Lesson 87 A perfect alibi 完美的不在场证明

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[学习提示] 本文可以看作是一个舞台剧的剧本，全文为对话，可以看作是表演时的台词，其中"凶杀"案为剧情设置，没有人在本文中受到伤害. 来看看不在场证明有多"完美".

[1]'[At the time the murder was committed,] I was travelling [on the 8 o'clock train] (to London),' said the man.[1]

[2]'Do you [always] catch (such an early) train?' asked the inspector.[2]

[3]'[Of course] I do,' answered the man.[3] 'I must be at work [at 10 o'clock].[4] My employer will confirm that I was there [on time].'[5]

[4]'Would (a later) train get you <to work> [on time]?' asked the inspector.[6]

[5]'I suppose it would, but I [never] catch (a later) train.'[7]

[6]'[At what time] did you arrive [at the station]?'[8]

[7]'[At ten to eight].[9] I bought a paper and waited [for the train].'[10]

[8]'And you didn't notice anything (unusual)?'[11]

[9]'[Of course] [not].'[12]

[10]'I suggest,' said the inspector, 'that you are not telling the truth.[13] I suggest that you did not catch the 8 o'clock train, but that you caught the 8.25 (which would [still] get you <to work> [on time].)[14] ^You see^, [on the morning of the murder], the 8 o'clock train did not run [at all].[15] It broke down [at

[1]"在凶杀发生的时候，我正坐在 8 点钟开往伦敦的火车上。"[1]那人说。[1]

[2]"您总是赶这样早的火车？"[2]探员问。[2]

[3]"当然是的，"那人回答。[3]"我必须在 10 点钟上班，[4]我的雇主可以证明我是按时到了那儿的。"[5]

[4]"晚一班的车也能按时送您上班吗？"[6]

[5]"可能也可以吧，但我从来没坐过晚一班的车。"[7]

[6]"您几点钟到的火车站？"[8]

[7]"7 点 50 分。[9]我买了张报纸，等着车来。"[10]

[8]"您没有注意到发生了什么异常情况吗？"[11]

[9]"当然没有。"[12]

[10]"我认为，"探员说，"你没说实话。[13]我认为你乘的不是 8 点钟的火车，而是 8 点 25 分的，这班车同样足以让你准时上班。[14]你看，在凶杀发生的那天早晨，8 点钟的那班车根本没有发车。[15]列车在芬格林车站出了故障，列车的线

Ferngreen station] and <u>was taken off</u> <u>the line</u>.'[16]

1. the murder was committed, I was travelling…

　　复合句，主句主谓结构，时间状语从句为主谓结构，后面 to London 为介词短语作后置定语修饰 train. 标题的 alibi 要留意发音，最后的 i 是/ai/的音，该词除了不在犯罪现场证明，还有借口、托词之意.

2. Do you catch a train?

　　疑问句，主谓宾结构.

3. of course I do.

　　简单句，主谓结构，本句是回答上一句 do you 开头的疑问句，of course 在这里作副词，表强调，当然之意，你也可以替换为 yes.

5. My employer will confirm that I was there.

　　复合句，主谓 + 宾语从句结构，从句为主系表结构.

6. Would a train get you to work?

　　疑问句，主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

7. I suppose it would, but I catch a train.

　　并列复合句，but 前句为主谓 + 省略了 that 的宾语从句，该从句为主谓结构；but 后为主谓宾结构.

8. did you arrive?

　　疑问句，就时间进行提问，所以回答是具体的时间即可.

10. I bought a paper and waited…

　　并列句，and 连接的两句，前句为主谓宾结构，后面为省略了主语的主谓结构.

11. you didn't notice anything…

　　简单句，主谓宾结构，其实是可以把 didn't 提前的，改为 Didn't you notice anything unusual?

12. I did not.

　　省略句，did you…?的否定回答是 no, I did not，这里省略了主语和谓语，只留下了否定词 not.

13. I suggest that you are not telling the truth.

　　复合句，主句主谓 + that 引导的宾语从句结构，从句为主谓宾结构. suggest 这里不是提醒，对话内容已经开始给犯罪嫌疑人进行犯罪时间推理了，没什么好提醒的，

而是认为. 从本句开始，译文的您也改为你，表示犯罪嫌疑人露出了马脚.

14. I suggest that you did not catch the 8 o'clock train, but that you caught the 8.25 which would get you to work…

复合句，主谓主句主谓 + 宾语从句，该从句为 but 连接的并列句.

在宾语从句中，前句为主谓宾结构，后句还额外有一个 which 引导的定语从句，后句本身是主谓宾结构，该定语从句是主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

15. the 8 o'clock train did not run…

简单句，主谓结构.

16. It broke down and was taken off the line.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，主语 it 指八点的那个列车，and 前句为主谓结构，动词短语 break down 作谓语.

and 后句为省略了主语的主谓宾结构，take off 为动词短语，这里是过去分词，用了被动语态，本句中为 discontinue, withdraw 之意，后面接宾语，the line，该词有火车铁轨，以及汽车/火车线路的意思，在这里应该取线路之意，即该列车因为坏了，所以本来该由本列车运营的线路停止了.

Lesson 88 Trapped in a mine 被困在矿井里

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Six men have been trapped [in a mine] [for seventeen hours].[1] [If they are [not] brought [to the surface] [soon]] they may lose their lives.[2] [However], rescue operations are proving difficult.[3] [If explosives are used,] vibrations will cause the roof (of the mine) <to collapse>.[4] Rescue workers are [therefore] drilling a hole [on the north side] (of the mine).[5] They intend to bring the men up [in a special capsule].[6] [If there had not been a hard layer (of rock) [beneath the soil],] they would have completed the job [in a few hours].[7] [As it is,] they have been drilling [for sixteen hours] and they [still] have a long way (to go).[8] [Meanwhile], a microphone, (which was lowered [into the mine] [two hours ago],) has enabled the men <to keep in touch with their closest relatives>.[9] [Though they are running out of food and drink,] the men are cheerful and confident that they will get out [soon].[10] They have been told that rescue operations are progressing [smoothly].[11] [If they knew how difficult it was to drill through the hard rock,] they would lose heart.[12]

6 个人被困在矿井里已有 17 个小时了。[1] 如果不把他们尽快救到地面上来，他们就有可能丧生。[2] 然而，事实证明营救工作非常困难。[3] 如果用炸药爆破，震动会引起矿顶塌落。[4] 因此，营救人员在矿井的北侧钻了一个洞。[5] 他们准备用一种特制的容器把这 6 个人营救上来。[6] 如果不是因为土壤下面有一层坚硬的岩石，他们的营救工作仅用几个小时就可以完成了。[7] 实际情况是，他们已连续钻了 16 个小时了，但离钻透还早着呢。[8] 与此同时，两个小时以前放到矿井里的一只麦克风使井下的人可以与其近亲属保持联系。[9] 虽然他们的食物和饮料都快消耗尽了，但这些人的心态乐观，坚信他们很快就会被救出去。[10] 他们一直被告知营救工作进行得非常顺利。[11] 如果他们知道了钻透那坚硬的岩石有多么困难，他们会丧失信心的。[12]

1. Six men have been trapped…

简单句，主谓结构.

2. If they are not brought… they may lose their lives.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，前面是 if 引导的条件状语从句，主谓结构.

4. If explosives are used, vibrations will cause the roof to collapse.

复合句，主句主谓宾 + 宾补结构，从句是 if 引导的条件状语从句，主谓结构.

7. If there had not been a hard layer, they would have completed the job.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，从句是 if 引导的条件状语从句，there be 句型.

8. As it is, they have been drilling and they have a long way.

并列复合句，and 连接前后两句，前句是复合句，主句为主谓结构，句首是 as 引导的方式状语从句，实际上；事实上；既然如此，in the actual state of affairs and often contrary to expectations，英英释义中强调与预期的正好相反，课文中便是这个用法.

and 后句为简单句，主谓宾结构.

9. a microphone, which was lowered…, has enabled the men to keep in touch…

复合句，主句为主谓宾 + 宾补的结构，中间有一个 which 引导的非限制性定语从句，该从句为主谓结构.

10. Though they are running out of food and drink, the men are cheerful and confident that they will get out.

复合句，主句为主系表 + 宾语从句结构，这里 cheerful 有心情愉快之意，但本文中明显不是这个意思，应取乐观之意，试想，一个人被困在矿井里会心情愉快吗？

句首是 though 引导的让步状语从句，主谓宾结构，动词词组作谓语.

11. They have been told that rescue operations are progressing.

复合句，主句主谓 + 宾语从句结构，该从句为主谓结构.

12. If they knew how difficult it was to drill through the hard rock, they would lose heart.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，从句是 if 引导的条件状语从句，该条件状语从句中又包含一个 how 引导的宾语从句，该宾语从句 it 是形式主语，后面动词不定式短语才是真正的主语.

Lesson 89 A slip of the tongue 口误

成长足迹：20＿年＿月＿日

People will do anything [to see a free show] — [even if it is a (bad) one.]¹ [When the news got round {that a (comedy) show would be presented [at our local cinema] [by the P. and U. Bird Seed Company],}] we {all} rushed [to see it].² We had to queue [for hours] [to get in] and there must have been several hundred people (present) [just] [before the show began.]³ [Unfortunately], the show was one of the dullest (we have [ever] seen.)⁴ Those (who failed to get in) need [not] have felt disappointed, [as many of the artistes (who should have appeared) did [not] come.]⁵ The (only funny) things (we heard [that evening]) came [from the advertiser] [at the beginning of the programme].⁶ He was [obviously] [very] nervous and [for some minutes] stood [awkwardly] [before the microphone].⁷ [As soon as he opened his mouth,] everyone burst out laughing.⁸ We {all} know what the poor man *should* have said, but what he [*actually*] said was: 'This is the Poo and Ee Seed Bird Company. ^Good ladies, evening and gentlemen^!'⁹

人们总会想尽办法去看不花钱的演出——哪怕是糟糕的演出。¹当"皮尤"鸟食公司将在我们当地影院演出喜剧节目的消息传开后,我们都赶紧跑去观看。²我们得排好几个小时的队才得以进场。³在演出开始前场内肯定已有好几百人了。³不幸的是,这是我们看过的最无聊的演出。⁴那些没能进场的人没有必要感到失望,因为很多本应出场的专业演员都没有来。⁵那天晚上有趣的事情仅有节目开始时那个报幕员的开场白。⁶他显然非常紧张,局促不安地在麦克风前站了好几分钟。⁷但他刚一开口说话,人们便哄堂大笑起来。⁸我们都明白那个可怜的人**应该**说些什么,而他**实际**说的却是:"这是拉屎,呃,鸟食公司,女士们好,晚上和先生们!"⁹

1. People will do anything even if it is a one.

复合句,主句主谓宾结果,后面是 even if 引导的让步状语从句,主系表结构.

2. When the news got round that a show would be presented, we rushed.

复合句,主句为主谓结构,从句是 when 引导的时间状语从句,该从句为主谓结构,且在该从句中,有一个 that 引导的同位语从句作 news 的同位语,主谓结构. 本句

的 present 为动词，下文为形容词，请查字典了解该词所有义项.

3. We had to queue and there must have been people before the show began.

并列复合句，and 引导前后两句，前句为主谓结构，后句为 there be 句型，有一个 before 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构.

4. the show was one we have seen.

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是一个定语从句，主谓结构.

5. Those who failed to get in need not have felt disappointed, as many of the artistes did not come.

复合句，主句为主谓结构，后面是 as 引导的原因状语从句，主谓结构. 在主句和从句中，各自有一个 who 引导的定语从句，均为主谓(宾)结构.

6. The only funny things we heard came…

复合句，主句为主谓结构，这中间有一个省略了关系代词 that 的定语从句，还原为 that we heard that evening，关系代词作宾语，一般来说，被 the only 修饰的先行词后面接的定语从句，只能用 that 或者省略，尤其是考试的时候，应遵循此原则，但在文献中，也有用 which 的.

主句中先行词 things 在定语是 only 的情况下，用了复数，此时的 only 不是唯一，而是只有、仅仅，后面可以是几个事情，比如我就只有<u>吃饭和睡觉</u>的时候不用动脑子，有两件事，也可以用 only，这个只有便是句中类似的情况，更具体而言，things 是由定语从句 we heard that evening 修饰的，所以也就是那晚听到的内容，从文章最后可以知道，报幕除了念错了公司名字，还念错了问候语，这些就是那天晚上仅有的笑料了. 故教材翻译成唯一，有误.

7. He was nervous and stood…

并列句，均为主谓结构.

8. As soon as he opened his mouth, everyone burst out laughing.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，句首是 as soon as 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

9. We know what the man should have said, but what he said was…

并列复合句，but 连接前后两句，前句为主谓 + what 引导的宾语从句结构，该从句为主谓结构；后句则是 what 引导的主语从句，该从句作为主语，跟 was 还有后面引导的直接引语一起，构成了主系表结构，所以引号里面的内容是一个表语从句.

Lesson 90 What's for supper? 晚餐吃什么？

Fish and chips has [always] been a (favourite) dish [in Britain], but [as the oceans have been overfished,] fish has become [more and more] expensive.[1] So it comes [as a surprise] to learn that giant fish are terrifying the divers [on North Sea oil rigs].[2] Oil rigs have to be repaired [frequently] and divers, (who [often] have to work [in darkness] [a hundred feet under water],) have been frightened [out of their wits] [by giant fish] (bumping into them) [as they work.][3] [Now] they have had (special) cages <made> [to protect them from these monsters].[4] The fish are not sharks or killer whales, but favourite eating varieties (like cod and skate) (which grow [to unnatural sizes], [sometimes] [as much as twelve feet in length].)[5] Three factors have caused these fish <to grow so large>: {the warm water round the hot oil pipes under the sea}; {the plentiful supply of food thrown overboard by the crews on the rigs}; {the total absence of fishing boats around the oil rigs}.[6] ^As a result^, the fish [just] eat and eat and grow and grow [in the lovely warm water].[7] Who eats who?[8]

炸鱼柳和薯条一直是英国人喜爱的一道菜，但是由于对海洋的过度捕捞，鱼肉已经变得越来越昂贵。[1]因此，听说北海石油钻井平台上的潜水员受到巨型鱼类的恐吓，确实很让人吃惊。[2]钻井平台需要经常修理，潜水员常常要在水下 100 英尺摸黑工作，他们曾在工作时被撞到他们身上的大鱼吓得惊惶失措。[3]现在他们有了特制的笼子，用来保护他们免受这些庞然大物的侵袭。[4]这些鱼并不是鲨鱼或虎鲸，而是深受人们喜爱的食用鱼品种，如鳕鱼和鳐鱼，只不过它们长得出奇地大，有时长达 12 英尺。[5]这些鱼能长得这么大是由 3 个因素造成的：海底热的输油管道附近的温暖的海水；钻井平台工作人员抛到海里的充足的食物；以及钻井平台周围根本没有捕鱼船只。[6]结果是，这些鱼就在可爱的温暖的水流中吃呀吃，长呀长。[7]究竟谁吃谁呢？[8]

0. 标题

What's for supper? 特殊疑问句，介词短语作表语.

1. Fish and chips has been a dish, but as the oceans have been overfished, fish has become

expensive.

并列复合句，but 连接前后两个句子，前句为主系表结构，后句的主句也是主系表结构，不过有一个 as 引导的原因状语从句，为主谓结构. 这里的 fish and chips 就是西餐的鱼柳和薯条. overfished 在这里是动词的被动语态.

2. it comes to learn that giant fish are terrifying the divers.

复合句，it 是形式主语，后面动词不定式短语为真正的主语，这个主语中有一个 that 引导的宾语从句，属于主语内部的进一步分析.

3. Oil rigs have to be repaired and divers, who have to work… have been frightened…
   as they work.

并列复合句，本句结构较为复杂，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓结构；and 后句是一个复合句，主干是 divers have been…，只不过中间有一个 who 引导的非限制性定语从句修饰 divers，为主谓结构，最后面还有一个 as 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构.

4. they have had cages made.

简单句，主谓宾 + 宾补的结构，have sth. done，不过这里的时态是现在完成时，故而第一个 have 是起语法作用的，第二个 have 是有实际意义的动词，所以转为过去分词 had. 本课的关键句型就是 have 的各种时态，可以按照教材上的关键句型复习第 18 课，第 42 课和第 66 课.

5. The fish are not sharks or killer whales, but favourite eating varieties which grow…

并列复合句，这里 but 连接前后两个句子，前句为主系表结构，而 but 后面所连接的句子省略了主系成分，只简写了表语，而该表语被一个 which 所引导的定语从句修饰，该定语从句为主谓结构.

6. factors have caused fish to grow…

简单句，主句是主谓宾 + 宾补结构，后面是一连串的同位语，相当于是补充 factors 的具体内容.

本句一定要背下来，并且学会在作文中使用. 这种表达非常地道.

例: I think two additional **factors** have caused Americans <to feel crappy about their economy>.[1] 我认为还有两点因素导致了美国人认为其经济糟糕. [crappy *adj.* of very bad quality 劣质的；蹩脚的；糟糕的，其比较级为 crappier，最高级为 crappiest]

7. the fish eat and eat and (the fish) grow and grow…

并列句，此处补充了 and 后句所省略的主语，这样可以理解该句三个 and 的层次

---

[1] https://www.forbes.com/sites/digitalrules/2006/02/15/why-do-we-feel-bad-when-things-are-good

情况，第一个 and 和第三个 and 起谓语之中的连接作用；第二个 and 才是连接两个句子的作用.

8. Who eats who?

简单句，主谓宾结构，这里的疑问句是对于到底是鱼儿吃钻井平台的人们投喂的饲料呢，还是鱼儿本身就是要被人类吃的，到底是谁吃谁.

Lesson 91 Three men in a basket 三人同篮

成长足迹：20＿＿年＿＿月＿＿日

A pilot noticed a balloon (which seemed to be making for a Royal Air Force Station (nearby).)¹ He informed the station [at once], but no one (there) was able to explain the mystery.² The officer (in the control tower) was very angry [when he heard the news,] [because balloons can be a great danger [to aircraft].]³ He said that someone might be spying [on the station] and the pilot was ordered <to keep track (of the strange object)>.⁴ The pilot managed to circle the balloon [for some time].⁵ He could make out three men [in a basket] (under it) and one of them was holding a pair of binoculars.⁶ [When the balloon was over the station,] the pilot saw one of the men <taking photographs>.⁷ [Soon afterwards], the balloon began to descend and it landed [near an airfield].⁸ The police were called in, but they could not arrest anyone, for the basket contained two Members of Parliament and the Commanding Officer of the station!⁹ [As the Commanding Officer explained [later,]] one half (of the station) did not know what the other half was doing!¹⁰

一个飞行员发现了一只热气球，它像是正飞往附近的一个皇家空军基地。¹飞行员马上把情况报告了该基地，但那里没有一个人能解释这到底是怎么回事。²控制塔上的人员得知这一消息后，非常气愤，因为热气球可以给飞机带来极大的安全隐患。³他说可能有人正对基地进行侦察，因此命令那个飞行员跟踪那个陌生飞行物。⁴飞行员设法绕着热气球飞了一阵。⁵他看清了热气球下面有 3 个人待在一只筐里，其中一个举着望远镜。⁶当热气球飞临基地上空时，飞行员看见有一个人在拍照。⁷不久，气球开始降落，着陆在一个停机坪附近。⁸警察被召来了，但他们却不能逮捕任何人，因为筐里是两名议会议员和一名基地的指挥官！⁹正如指挥官后来解释的那样，基地一半的人不知道剩下的人正在干什么！¹⁰

1. A pilot noticed a balloon which seemed to be making…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面是 which 引导的定语从句，为主系表结构，动词不定式短语作表语. 本句的 balloon 本身也有热气球之意，完整表达是 hot air balloon.

2. He informed the station, but no one was able to explain the mystery.

并列句，but 连接前后两句，均为主谓宾结构. be able to explain 在第 33 课也用了同样的表达，还记得吗？

3. The officer was angry when he heard the news, because balloons can be a danger.

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓宾结构；最后是 because 引导的原因状语从句，主系表结构.

4. He said that someone might be spying and the pilot was ordered to keep track.

并列复合句，and 连接前后两句，前句主句是主谓 + 宾语从句结构，该从句为主谓结构；后句为主谓 + 主补结构，还原为 ordered the pilot to keep track 就是宾语 + 宾补了.

6. He could make out three men and one of them was holding a pair of binoculars.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，均为简单句，主谓宾结构. make out 动词词组，在这里是辨别的意思，to see and identify with difficulty or effort.

7. When the balloon was over the station, the pilot saw one of the men taking photographs.

复合句，主句主谓宾 + 宾补结构，前面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主系表结构.

8. the balloon began to descend and it landed…

并列句，and 连接前后两句，均为简单句，前句主谓宾结构，后句主谓结构.

9. The police were called in[1], but they could not arrest anyone[2], for the basket contained two Members[3].

并列句，but 和 for 连接三个句子，1. 主谓结构；2. 主谓宾结构；3. 主谓宾结构.

10. As the Commanding Officer explained, one half did not know what the other half was doing!

复合句，主句是主谓 + 宾语从句结构，这个从句是 what 引导的，what 本身在从句中作宾语，该宾语从句为主谓宾结构. 句首是 as 引导的原因状语从句，主谓结构.

关于 one half of the station 很明显是这个基地一半的人，而不是按照地理位置来划分出对称或者相同大小的区域，教材翻译有误. 前文也谈及了控制塔，也就是航空领域的塔台，塔台是一定能看到基地 360 度空域的，不存在这一半和另一半在地理上不相通、不了解的情况. 一个大公司或者大的组织，人员冗杂，一半的人并不了解其他人的工作内容是非常正常的情况，这个小故事便讽刺了这样的问题.

Lesson 92 Asking for trouble 自找麻烦

成长足迹：20＿＿年＿＿月＿＿日

[1]It must have been about two [in the morning] [when I returned [home].]¹ I tried to wake up my wife [by ringing the doorbell], but she was fast asleep, so I got a ladder [from the shed] (in the garden), put it [against the wall], and began climbing [towards the bedroom window].² I was almost there [when a sarcastic voice (below) said,] 'I don't think the windows need cleaning [at this time of the night].'³ I looked down and [nearly] fell [off the ladder] [when I saw a policeman.]⁴ I [immediately] regretted answering [in the way] (I did,) but I said, 'I enjoy cleaning windows [at night].'⁵

[1]我回到家时，肯定都凌晨两点左右了。¹我按响了门铃，试图叫醒我的妻子，但她睡得很熟。²于是，我从花园的小棚里搬来了一个梯子，把它靠在墙边，开始向卧室的窗口爬去。²快要爬到窗口时，下面有个讽刺的口吻说："我看这窗户没必要现在这么晚擦吧。"³我向下面看去，当我看清是一个警察时，差一点儿从梯子上掉下去。⁴我回答完之后马上就后悔不该这么说了，我说的是："我喜欢在夜里擦窗子。"⁵

（*To be continued* 未完待续）

1. It must have been about two when I returned…

　　复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构.

2. I tried to wake up my wife¹ but she was fast asleep² so I got a ladder, put it, and began climbing³…

　　并列句，本句分成 3 个句子，1. 主谓宾结构，动词不定式短语作宾语；2. 主系表结构；3. 并列句，三个并列的谓语，后面两个相当于省略了主语，都是主谓宾结构.

3. I was almost there when a sarcastic voice said¹ I don't think the windows need cleaning²…

　　复合句，这里涉及到一个直接引语，我们拆分成两个句子来分析，1. 复合句，主句为主系表结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句；2. 主句主谓 + 宾语从句结构，宾语从句省略了 that，该从句是主谓宾结构.

4. I looked down and fell when I saw a policeman.

　　复合句，主句为并列句，主谓结构，有两个谓语；后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主谓结构.

5. I regretted answering in the way I did¹, but I said, I enjoy cleaning windows²…

复合句，又涉及到了直接引语的情况，我们拆开来分析，1. 主谓宾结构，里面有一个省略了引导词 that 的定语从句 I did，主谓结构；2. 简单句，主谓宾结构.

[2]'[So] do I,' answered the policeman [in the same tone].[1] 'Excuse my interrupting you.[2] I hate to interrupt a man [when he's busy [working],] but would you mind coming with me [to the station]?'[3]

[3]'^Well^, I'd prefer to stay [here],' I said.[4] '^You see^, I've forgotten my key.'[5]

[4]'(Your) what?' he called.[6]

[5]'My key,' I shouted.[7]

[6][Fortunately], the shouting woke up my wife (who opened the window [just] [as the policeman had started to climb [towards me].])[8]

[2]"巧了，我也是，"警察用同样的声调回答 [1]，"请原谅我打断你。[2] 当一个人在忙着干活时，我是不愿意去打断他的，但你能跟我到警察局去一趟吗？" [3]

[3]"可我更愿意呆在这儿，"我说 [4]，"其实，我忘带钥匙了。" [5]

[4]"你说什么？"他大声问道。[6]

[5]"忘带钥匙！"我喊道。[7]

[6]幸运得很，这喊声惊醒了我的妻子。[8] 就在警察开始向我爬上来时，她打开了窗户。[8]

1. the policeman answered…

简单句，这里的 so do I，警察用了男人的语调来表示谁信啊，类似于中文"这巧了不是，我也喜欢晚上擦窗户，行了，别扯了，赶紧跟我走一趟".

2. Excuse sth.

省略句，只有谓语和宾语，这里的表达接了动词的-ing 形式，在牛津词典上的例句与本句完全一样，标注了 formal，说明这种用法非常正式，这里符合警察的发言语境.

3. I hate to interrupt a man when he's busy, but would you mind coming with me…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，主系表结构；but 连接前后两句，but 后面是情态动词疑问句.

这里 to interrupt 与 interrupting 的用法区别，在第 44 课的 Key Structure 已专门做了比较，请复习教材 P200，比较 1. I hate to disturb you, but can I come in [for a moment] ^please^? 表示就是现在这一次打扰；2. I hate disturbing people [when they are busy.] 表示一直不喜欢在别人忙的时候打扰. 再次强调，新概念英语教材除了课文，其后面的句型和练习是成体系的，应该认真完成.

4. I'd prefer to stay.

简单句，主谓宾结构，动词不定式作宾语.

6. he called what.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

7. I shouted my key.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

8. the shouting woke up my wife who opened the window as the policeman had started to climb…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，有一个 who 引导的定语从句修饰 my wife，该定语从句为主谓宾结构，在这个定语从句中又包含一个 as 引导的时间状语从句，该从句为主谓宾结构.

Lesson 93 A noble gift 崇高的礼物

成长足迹：20＿＿年＿＿月＿＿日

One of the most famous monuments [in the world], {the Statue of Liberty}, was presented [to the United States of America] [in the nineteenth century] [by the people of France].¹ The (great) statue, (which was designed [by the sculptor] {Auguste Bartholdi},) took ten years [to complete].² The (actual) figure was made (of copper) (supported by a metal framework) (which had been [especially] constructed [by Eiffel].)³ [Before it could be transported [to the United States],] a site had to be found [for it] and a pedestal had to be built.⁴ The site (chosen) was an island (at the entrance of New York Harbour).⁵ [By 1884], a statue (which was 151 feet tall) had been erected [in Paris].⁶ [The following year], it was taken [to pieces] and sent [to America].⁷ [By the end of October 1886], the statue had been put together [again] and it was [officially] presented [to the American people] [by Bartholdi].⁸ [Ever since then], the (great) monument has been a symbol (of liberty) [for the millions of people] (who have passed [through New York Harbour] [to make their homes in America].)⁹

世界上最著名的纪念碑之一的自由女神雕像是在 19 世纪时由法国人民赠送给美国的。¹ 这座由雕塑家奥古斯特·巴索尔地设计的巨大雕像，花了 10 年时间完工。² 这座雕像的主体是用铜制成的，由埃菲尔特制的金属框架支撑着。³ 在雕像被运往美国之前，必须为它选好一块场地，同时必须建造一个基座。⁴ 场地选在了纽约港入口处的一个岛上。⁵ 到 1884 年，一座高度达 151 英尺的雕像在巴黎竖立起来了。⁶ 第二年，它被拆解成小块，运到美国。⁷ 到 1886 年 10 月底，这座雕像被重新组装起来，由巴索尔地正式赠送给美国人民。⁸ 从那时起，这座伟大的纪念碑对通过纽约港进入美国定居的千百万人来说就一直是自由的象征。⁹

1. One was presented…

简单句，主谓结构. 本句状语比较多，分别交代了对象、时间和来源. 美国的全称便是 the United States of America，美国人自己倾向于说 U.S.，连 A 都懒得说. 美国的立国文书为独立宣言 *The Declaration of Independence*，文书上的日期为 1776 年 7 月 4

日，因此，美国的国庆日便是 7 月 4 日，自由女神像是在 1886 年，美国独立 100 年时，法国人民送给美国人民的礼物. 独立宣言是非常著名的英语文章，建议学完本书 100 篇课文而又有兴趣的同学，尝试着在字典的帮助下，进行阅读，这里节录一句非常著名的话以作分享：

We hold (these) truths <to be self-evident>, {that all men are created <equal>,} {that they are endowed [by their Creator] [with certain unalienable Rights],} {that among these are Life, Liberty, and the pursuit of Happiness.} 我们认为这些真理是不言而喻的：人人生而平等，造物者赋予他们若干不可剥夺的权利，其中包括生命权、自由权和追求幸福的权利。

2. The statue, which was designed…, took ten years…

复合句，主句主谓结构，中间有一个 which 引导的非限制性定语从句，交代是出自谁之手，修饰主语，为主谓结构.

3. The figure was made which had been constructed…

复合句，主句主谓结构，后面是 which 引导的定语从句，主谓结构. 本句中的 Eiffel 指的是埃菲尔铁塔的设计者 Gustave Eiffel，他负责制造了金属框架，

4. Before it could be transported, a site had to be found and a pedestal had to be built.

并列复合句，and 连接前后两句，前句为主谓结构，有一个 before 引导的时间状语从句；后句也是主谓结构.

5. The site was an island.

简单句，主系表结构，后面是介词短语作后置定语，说明到底是哪里的岛.

6. a statue which was 151 feet tall had been erected.

复合句，主句主谓结构，中间有一个 which 引导的非限制性定语从句，主系表结构.

7. it was taken and sent…

并列句，均为主谓结构.

8. the statue had been put together and it was presented…

并列句，and 连接的两句，均为主谓结构，句中 present 作动词，to give sth to sb, especially formally at a ceremony 把…交给；颁发；授予.

9. the monument has been a symbol who have passed…

复合句，前句为主系表结构，后面有一个 who 引导的定语从句. 美国是一个移民国家，两百多年来，全世界向往自由的人们都来到北美这片土地追寻他们的美国梦.

Lesson 94 Future champions 未来的冠军

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

Experiments have proved that children can be instructed [in swimming] [at a very early age].¹ [At a special swimming pool] (in Los Angeles), children become expert [at holding their breath] [under water] [even before they can walk.]² Babies (of two months old) do not appear to be reluctant [to enter the water].³ It is [not] long [before they are [so] accustomed to swimming [that they can pick up weights [from the floor] (of the pool).]]⁴ A game (that is [very] popular [with these young swimmers]) is the (underwater tricycle) race.⁵ Tricycles are lined up [on the floor of the pool] (seven feet under water).⁶ The children compete [against each other] [to reach the other end] (of the pool).⁷ Many pedal (their) tricycles, but most of them prefer to push or drag them.⁸ (Some) children can cover the (whole) length (of the pool) [without coming up for breath even once].⁹ Whether they will [ever] become (future Olympic) champions, [only] time will tell.¹⁰ [Meanwhile], they should encourage those among us (who cannot swim [five yards] [before they are gasping [for air].])¹¹

实验证明,儿童在很小的时候就可以开始学习游泳。¹ 在洛杉矶的一个特制的游泳池里,孩子们甚至在还没有学会走路时就已经能熟练地在水下憋气了。² 两个月的婴儿并未显得不愿意入水。³ 他们很快便适应了游泳,以致能捡起池底的物品。⁴ 这些幼小的游泳运动员非常喜爱的一种游戏是水下三轮车比赛。⁵ 三轮车并排放在 7 英尺深的游泳池底上。⁶ 孩子们比赛看谁先到达游泳池的另一端。⁷ 很多孩子用脚蹬车,但多数孩子更愿意推或是拉着三轮车。⁸ 有些孩子泳池全程能够不露出水面换气。⁹ 他们将来是否能成为奥林匹克的冠军,只有时间才能作出回答。¹⁰ 与此同时,他们对我们中的那些游不了 5 码就得换气的人应该是种鼓舞。¹¹

1. Experiments have proved that children can be instructed…

复合句，主句主谓 + 宾语从句结构，从句为主谓结构，被动语态，可以被教导.

2. children become expert even before they can walk.

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是时间状语从句，主谓结构.

3. Babies do not appear to be reluctant…

简单句，主系表结构.

4. It is long before they are accustomed to swimming…

复合句，主句是主系表结构，后面是 before 引导的时间状语从句，该从句直到句末，该句中有一个 so…that 引导的结果状语从句，均为主谓宾结构.

5. A game that is popular… is the race.

复合句，主句主系表结构，中间有一个 that 引导的定语从句修饰主语，该从句为主系表结构.

6. Tricycles are lined up.

简单句，主谓结构.

7. The children compete.

简单句，主谓结构.

8. Many pedal tricycles, but most prefer to push or drag them.

并列句，but 连接前后两句，前句为主谓宾结构，后句也是主谓宾结构，宾语为不定式短语，由 or 连接，第二个动词不定式省略了 to.

9. children can cover the length.

简单句，主谓宾结构.

10. time will tell whether they…

复合句，主干部分还原了正常语序，课文中把宾语从句提前了，所以主句为主谓 + 宾语从句结构，从句为主系表结构.

11. they should encourage those among us who cannot swim before they are gasping.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面是 who 引导的定语从句，为主谓结构，该定语从句中还有一个 before 引导的时间状语从句，为主谓结构.

Lesson 95 A fantasy 纯属虚构

[1][When the Ambassador (of Escalopia) returned [home] [for lunch],] his wife got a shock.[1] He looked pale and his clothes were in a frightful state.[2]

[2]'What has happened?' she asked.[3] '[How] did your clothes get into (such) a mess?'[4]

[3]'A fire extinguisher, ^my dear^,' answered the Ambassador [drily].[5] 'University students set the Embassy <on fire> [this morning].'[6]

[4]'Good heavens!' exclaimed his wife.[7] 'And [where] were you [at the time]?'[8]

[5]'I was in my office [as usual],' answered the Ambassador.[9] 'The fire broke out [in the basement].[10] I went down [immediately], ^of course^, and that fool, {Horst}, aimed a fire extinguisher [at me].[11] He thought I was on fire.[12] I must [definitely] get that fellow <posted>.'[13]

[1]当艾斯卡罗比亚国的大使回到家吃午饭时，把他的夫人吓了一跳。[1]他面色苍白，衣服也搞得不成样子。[2]

[2]"发生了什么事？"她问，[3]"你的衣服怎么搞得一塌糊涂？"[4]

[3]"灭火器弄的，亲爱的，"大使冷冷地回答，[5]"今天上午大学生们放火点着了大使馆。"[6]

[4]"天啊！"他的夫人惊叫，[7]"那你当时在什么地方？"[8]

[5]"我和往常一样，在办公室里，"大使回答说。[9]"地下室突然着火，[10]我当然马上下去了。[11]但那个傻瓜霍斯特把灭火器对准了我。[11]他认为是我着火了。[12]我一定要把那个家伙打发走。"[13]

（*To be continued* 未完待续）

1. When the Ambassador returned, his wife got a shock.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，when 引导的时间状语从句为主谓结构.

2. He looked pale and his clothes were in a frightful state.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，均为主系表结构.

4. how did your clothes get into a mess?

特殊疑问句，did 提到主语 you 前面，主谓宾结构.

6. University students set the Embassy on fire.

简单句，主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

7. his wife exclaimed Good heavens!

简单句，主谓宾结构.

8. where were you?

特殊疑问句，were 提前了，主谓结构.

11. I went down, and that fool aimed a fire extinguisher.

并列句，and 连接前后两句，前句主谓结构，后句主谓宾结构.

12. He thought I was on fire.

复合句，主句主谓 + 宾语从句结构，这里的从句省略了 that，从句为主系表结构.

13. I must get that fellow posted.

简单句，主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

[6]The Ambassador's wife went on asking questions, [when she [suddenly] noticed a (big) hole [in her husband's hat].]¹

[7]'And [how] can you explain *that*?' she asked.²

[8]'^Oh^, that,' said the Ambassador.³ 'Someone fired a shot [through my office window].⁴ Accurate, don't you think?⁵ [Fortunately], I wasn't wearing it [at the time].⁶ [If I had been,] I would not have been able to get [home] [for lunch].'⁷

[6]大使夫人继续提出问题,此时她突然又发现丈夫的帽子上有个洞。¹

[7]"那么你对**那**又作何解释呢？"她问。²

[8]"那个嘛，"大使说,³"有人向我办公室窗户开了一枪。⁴ 真够准的，是不是？⁵ 幸亏我当时没戴帽子。⁶ 如果真戴着它,我现在就不能回家来吃午饭了。"⁷

1. The Ambassador's wife went on asking questions, when she noticed a hole.

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面是 when 引导的时间状语从句，也是主谓宾结构.

2. how can you explain that?

特殊疑问句，can 提前到主语前，主谓宾结构.

5. don't you think (that it was) accurate?

复合句，还原成完整的句子如主干结构所述，是一个宾语从句，该从句为主系表结构，所以句子中把表语提前，以作强调.

7. If I had been, I would not have been able to get…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，句首是 if 引导的条件状语从句，该从句使用了虚拟语气，if I had been wearing the hat，表示与过去的事实相反的假设，为主谓结构，虚拟语

气是难点，具体语法可以复习第 40 课，之后再仔细研究亦可. 在英语的学习过程中，不可能遇到一个知识点就能完全搞懂，可以先多读多背，培养语感，日后再回过头来学习，就没那么困难了.

Lesson 96 The dead return 亡灵返乡

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

A Festival (for the Dead) is held [once a year] [in Japan].[1] This festival is a (cheerful) occasion, [for [on this day], the dead are said [to return to their homes] and they are welcomed [by the living].][2] [As they are expected <to be hungry> [after their long journey],] food is laid out [for them].[3] (Specially-made) lanterns are hung [outside each house] [to help the dead to find their way].[4] [All night long], people dance and sing.[5] [In the early morning], the food (that had been laid out [for the dead]) is thrown [into a river] or [into the sea] [as it is considered <unlucky> for anyone living to eat it.][6] [In towns] (that are near the sea,) the (tiny) lanterns (which had been hung [in the streets] [the night before],) are placed [into the water] [when the festival is over.][7] Thousands of lanterns [slowly] drift [out to sea] [guiding the dead on their return journey to the other world].[8] This is a (moving) spectacle, for crowds of people stand [on the shore] [watching the lanterns drifting away] [until they can be seen [no more].][9]

日本每年过一次"亡灵节"。[1]这个节日是个欢乐的日子，因为在这一天，据说死去的人要回到他们生前的家，活着的人则对他们表示欢迎。[2]考虑到他们在经过长途旅行之后会感到饥饿，所以为他们摆放好了食品。[3]特制的灯笼挂在各家的门外，为的是帮助亡灵看清道路。[4]整个夜晚人们载歌载舞。[5]一大早，人们便把为死者摆放的食品扔进河中或海里，因为人们认为活着的人吃了这些东西是不吉利的。[6]在靠海的城镇中，头天夜里挂在大街小巷的小灯笼在节后就放在了水里。[7]成千上万只灯笼慢慢漂向大海，指引着亡灵返回另一个世界。[8]这是一个感人的场面，人们成群地伫立在海岸上，注视着灯笼远去，直到再也看不见为止。[9]

1. A Festival is held…

简单句，主谓结构，被动语态，节日是被举办的.

2. This festival is an occasion, for the dead are said… and they are welcomed…

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是 for 引导的原因状语从句，该从句为并列句，and 连接，均为主谓结构.

3. As they are expected to be hungry, food is laid out…

复合句，主句主谓结构，句首是 as 引导的原因状语从句，主谓 + 主补结构. 这里如果为 expect them to be hungry 就是谓语 + 宾语 + 宾补的结构了.

4. lanterns are hung…

简单句，主谓结构，不过这里对于动词不定式短语所作的目的状语进行额外细分，是一个宾语 + 补足语的搭配 ~~to~~ help the dead <to find their way>.

6. the food that had been laid out is thrown as it is considered for anyone living to eat it.

复合句，主句主谓结构，有一个 that 引导的定语从句修饰主语 food，该定语从句为主谓结构. 最后是 as 引导的原因状语从句，it 是形式主语，后面的短语为真正的主语.

7. In towns that are near the sea¹, the lanterns which had been hung², are placed when the festival is over³.

复合句，本句较长，我们把三个从句在主干结构这里做了标记，主句是主谓结构 the lanterns are placed. 接下来我们逐句分析三个从句：1. 这里是一个 that 引导的定语从句修饰地点状语 towns，属于成分中的细分，为主系表结构；2. which 引导的定语从句修饰主句的主语，为主谓结构；3. when 引导的时间状语从句，为主系表结构.

8. Thousands of lanterns drift…

简单句，主谓结构，不过后面 guiding 现在分词短语引导的伴随状语比较长，需要留意，这里只是状语，并非从句.

9. This is a spectacle, for crowds of people stand until they can be seen.

并列复合句，for 是并列连词，连接前后两句，前句是简单句，主系表结构；后句是复合句，主句为主谓结构，含有一个 until 引导的时间状语从句，也是主谓结构.

单元复习

本课为复习课，教材 P435 的 SD 难点栏目提供了复习例句，斜体为正确词汇.

1. He came [to see me] [yesterday] [as *usual*]. 他昨天像往常一样来见我.

2. There was no one (I knew) [*among* those present]. 在场的人中没有我认识的人.

3. The *manager* (of this store) is kept [very] busy. 这家店的经理一直很忙.

4. Children's *clothes* are difficult (to choose). 儿童的衣服很难选择.

5. He [never] *greets* anyone [in the morning]. 他在早上从不和别人打招呼.

6. Your hands are [not] [very] *clean*, are they? 你的手不是很干净，是吗？

7. <u>Mary's</u> <u>in the kitchen</u>. <u>She's</u> *washing* <u>the plates</u>. 玛丽在厨房里. 她正在洗盘子.

8. [If <u>you</u> <u>lose</u> <u>your</u> *temper*] <u>you</u> <u>will regret</u> <u>it</u>. 如果你发脾气，你会后悔的.

9. <u>This problem</u> <u>is</u> [*too*] <u>difficult</u> (for me). 这个问题对我来说太难了.

10. <u>He</u> <u>is</u> [*fairly*] <u>good</u> [at his work]. 他的工作相当出色.

11. <u>He</u> <u>is trying</u> [hard] but <u>his work</u> <u>is</u> [still] [not] <u>good</u> [*enough*]. 他很努力，但他的工作仍然不够好.

12. <u>Young people</u> <u>should remain</u> *single* [for a few years] [before <u>they</u> <u>marry</u>.] 年轻人应该在结婚前保持几年的单身.

13. <u>There</u> <u>was</u> <u>a long</u> *queue* [at the bus stop]. 公交车站上排起了长队.

Unit 4 Special Lesson 第 4 单元特别课文
The Sacred Tree 圣树

成长足迹：20__年__月__日

[学习提示] 这是本书最后一篇课文，在这里给大家介绍一个社会学中著名的概念，自我实现预言，self-fulfilling prophecy. 当你把自己的未来想清楚之后，通过努力去实现自己的目标，会有更大的可能性达成，即实现自己所做的预言.

[In the nineteenth century], Mugo Kibiru, {a famous prophet} (of the Kikuyu tribe), foretold that a fig tree (at Thika), (twenty-six miles north of Nairobi), would wither and die [on the day] ([that] Kenya gained independence.)[1] Kibiru [also] prophesied that Kenya would become a white man's colony, but that [one day] the white man would return the land [to the Africans].[2] He foresaw the coming (of the railway) (which he described <as 'an iron snake with many legs, like an earthworm'>.)[3] Kibiru's prophecies proved to be [so] accurate [that [for many years] the tree (at Thika) was regarded <as sacred>.][4] [Even] the white men took the prophecy [seriously], for they built the tree [up with earth] and put a concrete wall [around it] [so that it would [not] fall.][5] These measures were doomed to fail.[6] [Shortly before Kenya gained independence,] the tree was struck [by lightning] and it began to wither [rapidly].[7] [By the day Kenya [officially] became independent,] it had decayed [completely], [fulfilling the prophecy] (made over seventy years before) [by Kibiru].[8]
[1]

在 19 世纪，肯尼亚一位著名的预言家 Mugo Kibiru 预言一颗在锡卡的无花果树,在树枯萎和死掉的那天,肯尼亚将获得独立。[1] 锡卡在内罗毕往北 26 英里处。[1] Kibiru 还预言肯尼亚将会变成白种人的殖民地,而且有一天白种人会将土地归还给非洲人。[2] 他预见铁路的到来,他描述为"一条有着很多腿的钢铁之蛇,就像蚯蚓"。[3] Kibiru 的预言被证明非常精准,所以多年以来,锡卡的树也被认为是神圣的。[4] 甚至白种人也把预言当回事,因为他们围绕着树修建了水泥围墙,以防树倒塌。[5] 这些措施注定失败。[6] 肯尼亚获得独立不久,这棵圣树就被闪电击中，并迅速枯萎。[7] 在肯尼亚正式独立当天,圣树也完全腐烂，70 年前由 Kibiru 所做的预言得以实现。[8]

---

[1] 选自《新概念英语 2》，北京：外语教学与研究出版社 2019.7. 第 339 页.

1. Mugo Kibiru foretold that a fig tree would wither and die… that Kenya gained independence.

复合句，主句主谓 + 宾语从句结构，that 引导的宾语从句为主谓结构，后面跟了一个 that 引导的定语从句修饰 day.

这位预言家在历史上似有其人，英文维基百科有对应词条，但提示需要更多的资料予以证实，全名是 Mugo wa Kibiru，其中 Mugo 是 a healer 治愈师的意思. 他的这些故事都缺乏史料证实，所以我们只能说这些是 anecdotes，轶事.

2. Kibiru prophesied that Kenya would become a white man's colony, but that the white man would return the land…

并列复合句，主句主谓 +that 引导的宾语从句结构，有两个 that 引导的宾语从句，他们是并列的，由 but 予以连接. 第一个宾语从句为主系表结构；第二个则为主谓宾结构.

3. He foresaw the coming which he described as…

复合句，主句主谓宾结构，后面有一个 which 引导的定语从句修饰 railway，主谓宾 + 宾补结构.

4. Kibiru's prophecies proved to be accurate that the tree was regarded as sacred.

复合句，主句主系表结构，后面是 so…that 结构的结果状语从句，主谓 + 主语补语结构，因为是被动语态，所以原本的宾语补足语转作主语补足语，主动语态是 regard the tree <as sacred>.

5. Even the white men took the prophecy, for they built the tree and put a concrete wall so that it would not fall.

并列复合句，for 作连词，连接前后两句，前句为简单句，主谓宾结构；后句为复合句，主句为主谓宾结构，后面是 so that 引导的目的状语从句，该从句为主谓结构.

6. These measures were doomed to fail.

简单句，主谓宾结构，动词不定式作宾语.

7. Shortly before Kenya gained independence, the tree was struck and it began to wither.

复合句，主句为并列句，两句由 and 连接，前句为主谓结构，后句为主谓宾结构，动词不定式作宾语；句首是时间状语从句，主谓宾结构.

8. By the day Kenya became independent, it had decayed…

复合句，主句主谓结构，用了过去完成时，had done，句首是时间状语从句，主系表结构.

后记　一次奇妙的旅程

吴应时　2022 年 3 月 30 日

如果从第一次有人问起我什么时候出新概念 2 算起，这本书迟到了超过十年。因为从一开始，我就觉得，没有必要用分析句子成分的方法来拆解这本经典教材。毕竟，新概念 3 和 4 所含的长难句才多，更值得我去分析。可我没有意识到一件事情，绝大多数需要注解分析的学生，是新概念 2 的受众。既然如此，我改变了自己的想法，就还是让我来做这件事情吧。到此为止了，只做新概念 2，不再做新概念 1 了，需要学 1 的读者，直接购买教材即可。

这次编写的过程，算是三本书里面时间最为紧张的。如你们所了解的，在编写本书时，恰好是中国香港新冠疫情最凶猛的时期，我除了需要花时间处理工作和生活的事情，还需要尽量按照自己制定的计划推进编写工作。但我显然还是低估了编写这本书的困难程度，知识越偏向基础，以往可能都无需讲解的地方，我需要花篇幅和时间予以注解，很多细节还需要查找资料，确保准确才行。越是细枝末节的内容，越不能马虎。

随着编写的深入，我发现这本书实在是太优秀了，我自己在编写的过程中，都学到了很多以往忽略的知识点。学习英语，很重要的一点就是用这门语言把故事讲好，这 100 篇小短文真的是篇篇经典，每一篇都是一则有趣的故事。若是我在中学阶段就能看到分析了每一句话的这本书，该是多么好的一件事情。

这次编写挺辛苦的，每一篇文章我都需要逐词跟教材进行核对，生怕原文出错，毕竟这是要让大家背记的教材，除此之外，还需要逐句核对翻译，对于不精准的地方予以修改。给每一句话编号其实也很繁琐，但我跟自己说，每次就完成一篇，这样一篇一篇地做下去，总会做完的。真心希望你们也能花时间一篇一篇地学完。

这次在编写的时间上真的非常仓促，每天我都能收到很多读者朋友的催更私信和评论，谢谢你们的督促和鼓励。虽然如期完成，但全书小错误肯定不少，如果出现任何错误，都是我自己的责任，怪不得时间仓促。如果你发现了任何错误，请你一定要告诉我，这样我能更新勘误，未来的新版本也会予以修正。就像《应时新概念英语》3 和 4，我在 2022 年 2 月都做了更新。

整套书我都是免费直接分享的，没有搞套路引流和营销，所以传播得不太理想。我有个小小的请求，如果你们方便，能否在社交平台向大家介绍这一套免费的电子资料，让更多有需要却缘分未到的人看到。在此先谢谢你。祝你学习愉快，学有所成，期待你的分享。◇

本系列教材一览
《应时新概念英语 2》　2022 年 3 月第 1 版
《应时新概念英语 3（原应景新概念英语 3）》　2022 年 2 月第 3 版
《应时新概念英语 4》　2022 年 2 月第 2 版
《2023 应时考研英语阅读精读》2022 年 5 月第 1 版[每年考研结束后更新]